

**ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP**

**Headquarters and  
Headquarters Company,  
Engineer Combat Battalion,  
Corps**

**AUGUST 2003**

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

**HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

**This publication is available at Army  
Knowledge Online ([www.us.army.mil](http://www.us.army.mil))  
and the General Dennis J. Reimer  
Training and Doctrine Digital Library at  
([www.adtdl.army.mil](http://www.adtdl.army.mil))**

**MISSION TRAINING PLAN**  
**for the**  
**Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Combat**  
**Battalion, Corps**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<u>PAGE</u>
Table of Contents .....	i
Preface .....	ii
Chapter 1. Unit Training .....	1-1
Chapter 2. Training Matrixes .....	2-1
Chapter 3. Mission Outlines/Training Plans .....	3-1
Chapter 4. Training Exercise .....	4-1
Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines .....	5-1
Chapter 6. External Evaluation .....	6-1
Appendix A - Exercise Operation Order .....	Appendix A-1
Appendix B - Threat Analysis .....	Appendix B-1
Appendix C - Metric Conversion Chart .....	Appendix A-1
Glossary .....	Glossary-1
References .....	References-1
Questionnaire .....	Questionnaire -1

---

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

## PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides active component (AC) and reserve component (RC) training managers with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. This MTP aligns with and is part of the United States (US) Army Training and Tactical Doctrine Program. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are expected to be executed with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in this MTP. Standards for training may be raised, but they may not be lowered.

This MTP applies to the Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps, TOE 05436L200 and 05436L300.

The proponent for this publication is HQ, TRADOC. Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 directly to

Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns refer to both men and women.

## CHAPTER 1

### Unit Training

1-1. General. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit training program will depend on the—

- Unit mission-essential task list (METL).
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Unit training priorities.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher-echelon training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit training program consists of the following publications.

a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-435-66-MTP for the engineer combat battalion, corps (mech), battalion staff. This MTP indicates the relationship of the battalion training program to the next higher-level training program.

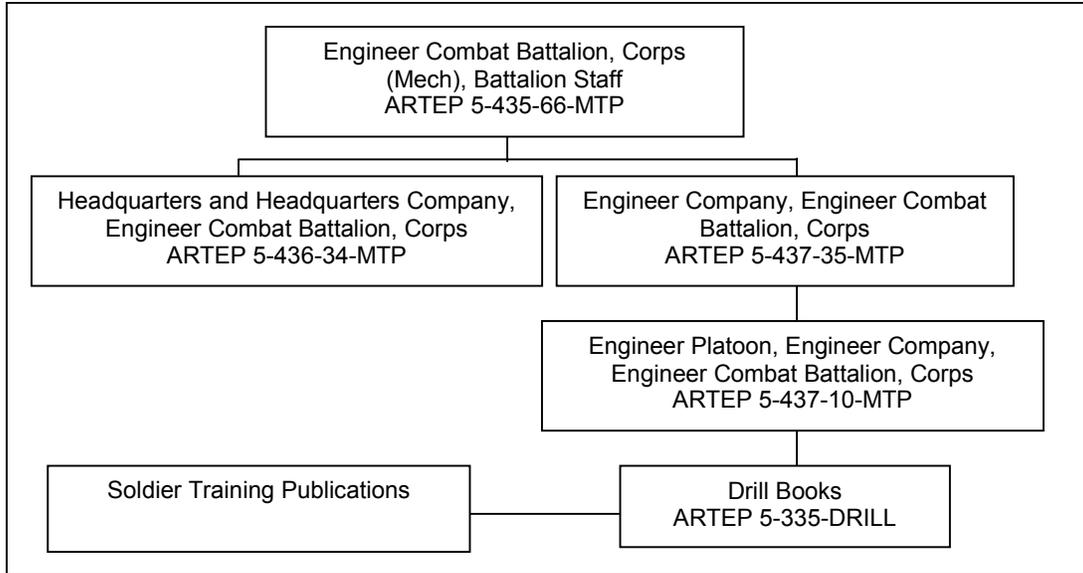
b. ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP for the headquarters and headquarters company, engineer combat battalion, corps. This MTP indicates the relationship of the support company training program to the battalion training program.

c. ARTEP 5-437-35-MTP for the engineer company, engineer combat battalion, corps. This MTP indicates the relationship of the company training program to the battalion training program.

d. ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP for the engineer platoons, engineer company, engineer combat battalion, corps. This MTP indicates the relationship of platoons' training program to the company training program.

e. ARTEP 5-335-DRILL for the engineer drills. The unit must sustain drills. They are US Army standard and may not be modified.

f. Soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialties (MOSs) and skill levels.



**Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship**

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendixes.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of an MTP. This chapter explains how to use an MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the mission and the collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercise, consists of an example field training exercise (FTX). This exercise provides training information and a preconstructed sample scenario. It can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This exercise may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, contains the T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the unit. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) countertasks. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs can be trained separately, in a situational training exercise (STX), in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise. Each T&EO is part of a mission and, in various combinations, composes the training exercise in Chapter 4.

(1) Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

(a) Elements. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.

(b) Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.

(c) **Reference.** This identifies the publication used to develop the task and is in parenthesis following the task number. If more than one reference is used, the reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.

(d) **Iteration.** This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The M identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

(e) **Commander/leader assessment.** This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit-leader input to develop an assessment of the overall capability of the organization to accomplish the task. Use the ratings listed below.

- **T - Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
- **P - Needs practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
- **U - Untrained.** The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

(f) **Conditions.** This describes the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

(g) **Task standards.** This states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit training status by using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

(h) **Task steps and performance measures.** This is a list of actions that are required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with any supporting individual tasks and their references. An asterisk (\*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of the task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard. The task step may contain performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step.

(i) **GO/NO-GO column.** This column is provided for annotating the performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an X in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

(j) **Task performance/evaluation summary block.** This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

(k) **Supporting individual tasks.** This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. The reference number, task number, and task title for each individual task are listed.

(l) Supporting collective tasks. This is a listing of all supporting collective tasks required to correctly perform the task. The reference number, task number, and task title for each individual task are listed.

(m) Opposing forces tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that the OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or lose to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

(2) Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Sample Operation Order, contains a sample operation order (OPORD) to be used with the exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Threat Analysis, describes local, regional, and global threats, and special situations that impact operations.

i. Appendix C, Metric Conversion Chart, shows how to convert US and metric measurements.

#### 1-4. Missions and Tasks.

a. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the TOE and an implied mission that the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for the unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for the unit:

- Provide engineer support to countermobility operations.
- Fight as infantry.
- Conduct general engineering operations.
- Provide engineer support to mobility operations.
- Plan engineer operations.
- Perform survivability construction.
- Sustain unit operations.
- Defend the unit.
- Conduct unit survivability operations.

b. Each of these tasks may be trained individually or jointly. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as a situational training exercise (STX). Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the unit ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

d. Leader tasks that support the unit missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of the missions.

e. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards outlined in the appropriate STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective-task training.

1-5. Training Principles. This MTP is based on the training principles explained in Field Manual (FM) 7-0.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program, developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions, will be a component of the Army Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS). The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training events and resources required to facilitate training to standard. CATS will be embedded in the Standard Army Training System (SATS), version 4.1 and higher. The Web site for this information is <http://www.atsc.army.mil/atmd/strac>.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive menu for training, reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit training strategy is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects those tasks required to train his METL from this MTP. The training strategies to be provided in the SATS 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. The unit training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit training strategy are discussed below.

(1) Maneuver- and collective-training strategy. The maneuver- and collective-training strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FMs.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or units, to move on to more complex training events. The

provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit METL and the commander's assessment of his unit training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective-training exercises in a specific unit training strategy.

e. When developing the unit training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL.

1-7. Training Conduct. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 7-0 and 25-101. The commander performs the following:

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for training based on his METL and guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and the FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, the command guidance. If they do not support the guidance or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrix in Chapter 2. This matrix provides a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There is never time to train everything. Orient the training toward the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule, using the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how to use multiechelon training for the best results.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained and schedules them on the unit training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Keeps subordinate leaders informed, and oversees their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection.

a. Safety. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and risk management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command that is appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines the ability of the unit to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are as follows:

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

- (3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.
- (4) Standards and procedures for task preferences that are clear and practical.
- (5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Risk Management. Risk management addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It helps commanders and leaders identify and predict the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment. Risk management is a five-step, cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5.

**Step 1.** Identify Any Hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.

**Step 2.** Assess the Hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk assessment matrix in Figure 1-2 is a tool to use for assessing hazards.

**Step 3.** Make Risk Decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operation. Accept no unnecessary risks, and make any remaining risk decisions at the proper level of command.

**Step 4.** Implement Controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANS), OPORDs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

**Step 5.** Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include a follow-up and an after-action review (AAR). Develop lessons learned.

c. Chain of Command. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. Responsibilities of the chain of command include—

- (1) Commanders.
  - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
  - (b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.
  - (c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.
  - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
  - (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.

			HAZARD PROBABILITY				
			FREQUENT	PROBABLE	OCCASIONAL	REMOTE	IMPROBABLE
			A	B	C	D	E
E F F E C T	CATASTROPHIC	I	EXTREMELY HIGH		HIGH		LOW
	CRITICAL	II	HIGH	HIGH		LOW	LOW
	MARGINAL	III	HIGH	MEDIUM		LOW	LOW
	NEGLIGIBLE	IV	LOW	LOW		LOW	LOW

**Severity**

Catastrophic	Death, permanent total disability, system loss, major property damage
Critical	Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of three months, major system damage, significant property damage
Marginal	Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system/property damage
Negligible	First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor system impairment

**Probability**

Frequent	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs often in career/equipment or both service life Continuously experienced
Probable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs several times in career/equipment service life Occurs frequently
Occasional	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life Occurs sporadically or several times in inventory service life
Remote	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Possible to occur in career/equipment service life Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life
Improbable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life Possible, but not probable; occurs only very rarely

**Risk Levels**

Extremely High	Loss of ability to accomplish mission
High	Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards
Medium	Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission
Low	Little or no impact on mission accomplishment

**Figure 1-2. Risk Assessment Matrix**

- (2) Staff.
  - (a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and developing risk reduction options for training.
  - (b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.
  - (c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
  - (d) Assess safety performance during training.
  - (e) Evaluate safety performance during AARs.

- (3) Subordinate leaders.
  - (a) Apply effective risk management concepts and methods consistently to the operations they lead.
  - (b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.
- (4) Individual soldiers.
  - (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts, and correct the situation when possible.
  - (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
  - (c) Take responsibility for personal safety.
  - (d) Work as a team member.
  - (e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. **Fratricide.** Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide prevention is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is, by definition, an accident. Risk assessment and risk management are mechanisms used to control the incidence of fratricide.

- (1) **Causes.** The primary causes of fratricide are—
  - (a) **Direct-fire control plan failures.** These failures result when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.
  - (b) **Land navigation failures.** These failures result when units stray out of sector, report incorrect locations, or become disoriented.
  - (c) **Combat identification failures.** These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.
  - (d) **Inadequate control measures.** These occur when units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures that are necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.
  - (e) **Reporting communication failures.** Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.
  - (f) **Weapons errors.** Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.
  - (g) **Battlefield hazards.** Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINES), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

(2) **Results.** Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

- (a) Loss of confidence in unit leadership.

- (b) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.
- (c) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.
- (d) Oversupervision of units.
- (e) Hesitation to conduct night operations.
- (f) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.
- (g) Loss of initiative.
- (h) Disrupted operations.
- (i) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

**Step 1.** Identify Any Hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during the analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires the identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

**Step 2.** Assess the Hazards. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-3). Consider the severity of environmental degradation when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrix.

**Step 3.** Make Environmental Risk Decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

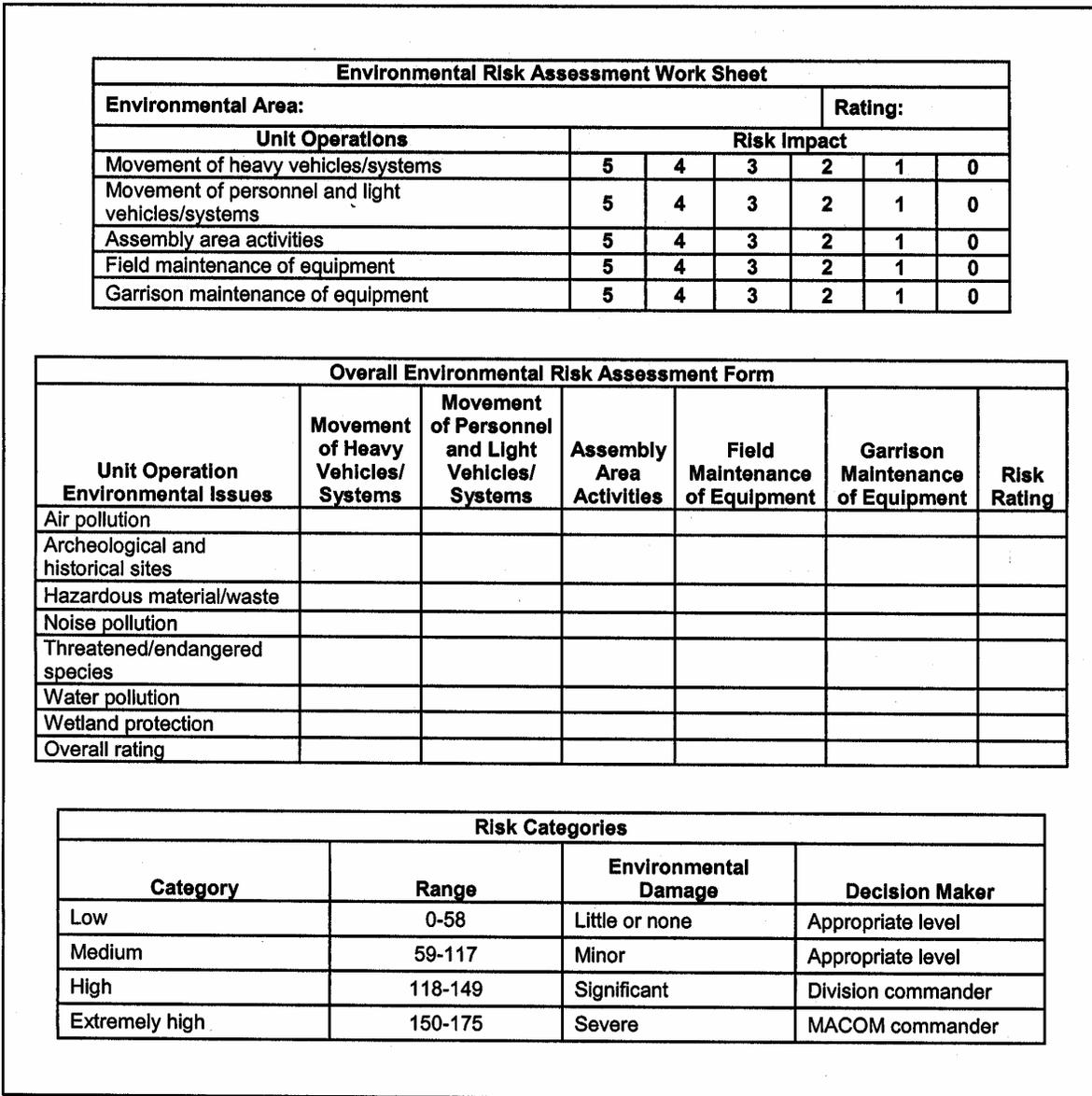
**Step 4.** Brief the Chain of Command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

**Step 5.** Implement Controls. Implement environmental-protection measures into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

**Step 6.** Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental-protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe the standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ that is two levels above the evaluated unit. See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.



**Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix**

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, and then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but evaluation should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that allows the correction of performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please make your comments on DA Form 2028 or the questionnaire provided at the end of this MTP and send to the address reflected in the preface.

## CHAPTER 2

### Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit personnel. The mission identification table listed in Figure 2-1 provides mission identification for the unit.

<b>Mission Identification Table</b> <b>Mission Title</b>
Provide engineer support to countermobility operations
Fight as infantry
Conduct general engineering operations
Provide engineer support to mobility operations
Plan engineer operations
Perform survivability construction
Sustain unit operations
Defend the unit
Conduct unit survivability operations

**Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table**

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating system (BOS), indicated by an X in the matrix. The BOSs that are used in this matrix are defined in United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using the collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks		Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>					
05-2-0408	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	X		X	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment				
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>					
05-2-0908	Conduct Quartering Party Operations	X	X		X
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry		X		
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry		X		
05-3-1226	Establish a Hasty Position		X		
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire		X		
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)	X	X		
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X		
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy	X		X	X
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush	X	X		

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
07-3-1123.05-T01A Conduct a Tactical Road March		X		
07-3-1135.05-T01A Conduct Actions at Danger Areas		X		
07-3-C211.05-T01A Move Tactically		X		
12-1-0409.05-T01A Prepare Personnel for Deployment				
<b>Protect the Force</b>				
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X			
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions				
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike				
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area				
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations				
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination				
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area				
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X		X	
05-2-0510 Direct Survivability Construction			X	X
05-2-0518 Control Construction of Survivability Positions	X			
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X			
05-3-0113 Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield				X
05-3-0210 Disable Critical Equipment and Material	X			
05-3-0230 Construct a Protective Obstacle	X		X	

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>Countermobility</b>	<b>Fight as Infantry</b>	<b>General Engineering</b>	<b>Mobility</b>
05-3-0904.05-R01A Establish Jobsite Security	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-5-0302 Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions		<b>X</b>		
07-2-0414.05-T01A Establish a Company Defensive Position				
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)				
19-3-2204.05-T01A Employ Physical Security Measures				
44-1-C220.05-T01A Use Passive Air Defense Measures				
44-1-C221.05-T01A Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms				
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk Management Procedures	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>				
05-1-0606 Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP)	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-1007 Conduct Administrative Operations				
08-2-0313.05-T01A Provide Emergency Treatment				
08-2-0314.05-T01A Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)				
08-2-C316.05-T01A Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)				
08-2-R303.05-T01A Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
08-2-R315.05-T01A Perform Field Sanitation Functions				
10-2-0317.05-T01A Provide Food Service Support				
10-2-0318.05-T01A Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations				
10-2-0319.05-T01A Receive Airdrop Resupply				
10-2-0320.05-T01A Provide Company Supply Support				
11-5-0050.05-T01A Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)				

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>Countermobility</b>	<b>Fight as Infantry</b>	<b>General Engineering</b>	<b>Mobility</b>
11-5-0121.05-T01A Provide a Field Cable or Wire System				
12-1-0403.05-T01A Report Casualties				
12-1-0405.05-T01A Conduct Replacement Operations				
12-1-0410.05-T01A Provide Legal Support				
16-1-1001.05-T01A Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program				
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)				
43-2-0001.05-T01A Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations				
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>				
05-1-0008 Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-1-0721 Plan/Control Augmentation Support	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0002 Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)	<b>X</b>			<b>X</b>
05-2-7008 Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-3-1018 Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
12-1-0408.05-T01A Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process				
12-2-0321.05-T01A Maintain Company Strength				
12-2-0338.05-T01A Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability				

Collective Tasks		Plan Engineer Operations	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>					
05-2-0408	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance		X	X	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment			X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>					
05-2-0908	Conduct Quartering Party Operations			X	X
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry				
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry				
05-3-1226	Establish a Hasty Position				X
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire				X
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)				X
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)			X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy			X	X
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush			X	X
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March			X	X
07-3-1135.05-T01A	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas				X
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically				X
12-1-0409.05-T01A	Prepare Personnel for Deployment			X	
<b>Protect the Force</b>					
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey			X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions				X
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack				X
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack				X
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike				X
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack				X

Collective Tasks	Plan Engineer Operations	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area				X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations				X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination			X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area			X	X
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment		X	X	X
05-2-0510 Direct Survivability Construction	X	X		
05-2-0518 Control Construction of Survivability Positions	X	X		X
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack			X	X
05-3-0113 Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield			X	X
05-3-0210 Disable Critical Equipment and Material			X	X
05-3-0230 Construct a Protective Obstacle			X	X
05-3-0904.05-R01A Establish Jobsite Security	X	X	X	X
05-5-0302 Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions			X	X
07-2-0414.05-T01A Establish a Company Defensive Position				X
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)			X	X
19-3-2204.05-T01A Employ Physical Security Measures	X		X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A Use Passive Air Defense Measures			X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms			X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>				
05-1-0606 Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP)			X	

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>Plan Engineer Operations</b>	<b>Survivability Construction</b>	<b>Sustain Operations</b>	<b>Unit Defense</b>
05-2-1007 Conduct Administrative Operations			X	
08-2-0313.05-T01A Provide Emergency Treatment			X	
08-2-0314.05-T01A Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)			X	
08-2-C316.05-T01A Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)			X	
08-2-R303.05-T01A Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	X		X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A Perform Field Sanitation Functions			X	X
10-2-0317.05-T01A Provide Food Service Support			X	
10-2-0318.05-T01A Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations			X	X
10-2-0319.05-T01A Receive Airdrop Resupply			X	
10-2-0320.05-T01A Provide Company Supply Support			X	
11-5-0050.05-T01A Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)			X	
11-5-0121.05-T01A Provide a Field Cable or Wire System			X	
12-1-0403.05-T01A Report Casualties			X	
12-1-0405.05-T01A Conduct Replacement Operations			X	
12-1-0410.05-T01A Provide Legal Support			X	
16-1-1001.05-T01A Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program			X	
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)			X	X
43-2-0001.05-T01A Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations			X	X
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>				
05-1-0008 Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	X		X	X
05-1-0721 Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X	X	X
05-2-0002 Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)		X	X	X
05-2-7008 Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks	Plan Engineer Operations	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense
05-3-1018 Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net		<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
12-1-0408.05-T01A Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process			<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
12-2-0321.05-T01A Maintain Company Strength			<b>X</b>	
12-2-0338.05-T01A Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability			<b>X</b>	

Collective Tasks		UNIT SURVIVABILITY
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>		
05-2-0408	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	<b>X</b>
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment	<b>X</b>
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	<b>X</b>
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>		
05-2-0908	Conduct Quartering Party Operations	<b>X</b>
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry	
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry	
05-3-1226	Establish a Hasty Position	
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire	<b>X</b>
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)	<b>X</b>
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	<b>X</b>
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy	<b>X</b>
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush	<b>X</b>
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March	<b>X</b>
07-3-1135.05-T01A	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas	<b>X</b>
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically	<b>X</b>
12-1-0409.05-T01A	Prepare Personnel for Deployment	
<b>Protect the Force</b>		
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	<b>X</b>
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions	<b>X</b>
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	<b>X</b>
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>UNIT SURVIVABILITY</b>
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	<b>X</b>
03-3-C209.05-T01A	React to Smoke Operations	<b>X</b>
03-3-C222.05-T01A	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C223.05-T01A	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>
03-3-C224.05-T01A	Conduct Operational Decontamination	<b>X</b>
03-3-C226.05-T01A	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	<b>X</b>
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	<b>X</b>
05-2-0510	Direct Survivability Construction	<b>X</b>
05-2-0518	Control Construction of Survivability Positions	<b>X</b>
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	<b>X</b>
05-3-0113	Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield	<b>X</b>
05-3-0210	Disable Critical Equipment and Material	<b>X</b>
05-3-0230	Construct a Protective Obstacle	<b>X</b>
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security	<b>X</b>
05-5-0302	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions	<b>X</b>
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position	<b>X</b>
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	<b>X</b>
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures	<b>X</b>
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	<b>X</b>
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	<b>X</b>
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures	<b>X</b>
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>		
05-1-0606	Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP)	

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>UNIT SURVIVABILITY</b>
05-2-1007	Conduct Administrative Operations	
08-2-0313.05-T01A	Provide Emergency Treatment	
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)	<b>X</b>
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)	<b>X</b>
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	<b>X</b>
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions	<b>X</b>
10-2-0317.05-T01A	Provide Food Service Support	
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations	<b>X</b>
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply	<b>X</b>
10-2-0320.05-T01A	Provide Company Supply Support	<b>X</b>
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	<b>X</b>
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	<b>X</b>
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties	<b>X</b>
12-1-0405.05-T01A	Conduct Replacement Operations	
12-1-0410.05-T01A	Provide Legal Support	
16-1-1001.05-T01A	Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program	
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	<b>X</b>
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations	<b>X</b>
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>		
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	<b>X</b>
05-1-0721	Plan/Control Augmentation Support	<b>X</b>
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)	<b>X</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)	<b>X</b>

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>UNIT SURVIVABILITY</b>
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	<b>X</b>
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	<b>X</b>
12-1-0408.05-T01A	Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process	<b>X</b>
12-2-0321.05-T01A	Maintain Company Strength	<b>X</b>
12-2-0338.05-T01A	Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	<b>X</b>

**Figure 2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix**

## CHAPTER 3

### Mission Outlines/Training Plans

3-1. General. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their support tasks. Each outline provides the trainer with a diagram of the unit mission, sample FTXs and/or STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them.

3-2. Mission Outlines. Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the unit ability to perform its missions. The mission outlines, Tables 3-1 through 3-5, provide the commander with a visual outline of his unit missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

**Table 3-1. Sample Countermobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON COUNTERMOBILITY</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0307	Construct a Log Obstacle
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures

**Table 3-2. Sample General Engineering Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY GENERAL ENGINEERING</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0726	Conduct Dump Truck Hauling Operations
05-3-0313	Construct Revetments
05-3-0402.05-R01A	Perform a Route Classification
05-3-0611	Construct/Repair a Bridge Abutment
05-3-0710	Assemble and Install Culverts
05-3-0765	Construct or Repair a Sewerage System
05-3-0778	Construct or Repair a Steel Frame Pre-engineered Structure
05-3-0784	Construct/Repair Headwalls
05-3-0787	Construct/Repair a Wood Frame Structure
05-3-0789	Construct/Repair a Concrete Structure
05-3-0790	Construct/Repair Electrical Utilities
05-3-0791	Construct/Repair a Water Distribution System
05-3-0792	Install Coupled Pipeline
05-3-0904	Establish Jobsite Security
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)

**Table 3-3. Sample Mobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON MOBILITY</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-0114	Conduct Breaching Operations
05-3-0404	Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-0609	Operate River Crossing Sites
05-3-0603	Prepare an Expedient Ford
05-3-0767	Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area

**Table 3-4. Sample Perform Survivability Construction Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-0304	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions
05-3-0305	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0312	Construct Bunkers and Shelters

**Table 3-5. Sample Unit Survivability/Unit Defense Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY UNIT SURVIVABILITY/UNIT DEFENSE</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft

## CHAPTER 4

### Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains a sample FTX. It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the FTX by exercise number, title, and page number.

**Table 4-1. FTX Exercise**

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
FTX 5-1-E0001	Conduct Mobility Operations	4-1

4-2. Field Training Exercise. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the unit to train its critical wartime missions. It provides a logical sequence for the performance of the tasks previously trained in STXs.

4-3. Situational Training Exercise. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. STXs provide the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. STXs—

- Provide repetitive training of missions.
- Allow the training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- Allow the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- Save time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

**ENGINEER COMPANY  
FTX  
5-1-E0001  
CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS**

1. **Objective**. This sample exercise trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the company operation, Conduct Mobility Operations.

2. **Interface**. This exercise supports the task force (TF) requirement to conduct combat operations.

3. **Training Enhancers**.

a. The training matrix in Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the company mission. Training that will improve its ability to perform its mission are—

(1) Planning, controlling, and coordinating mobility operations. Training may be conducted in garrison and/or local training areas by one of the following methods:

- (a) Classroom instruction.
- (b) A map exercise (MAPEX) combined with a sand table exercise.
- (c) A command post exercise (CPX) conducted in garrison.
- (d) A command field exercise (CFX) conducted in a field environment.

- (e) A tactical exercise without troops (TEWT).
- (f) A communications exercise (COMEX).
- (g) Simulations and games.

(2) Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in the following activities:

- (a) Aggressive unit sports and physical-fitness programs.
- (b) Leader and individual confidence courses.
- (c) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.
- (d) Awareness of the unit heritage.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order (WO) and ends upon the completion of area damage control (ADC) activities. Figure 4-1 illustrates the general scenario of the exercise. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario and Figure 4-2 is the movement order for the scenario.

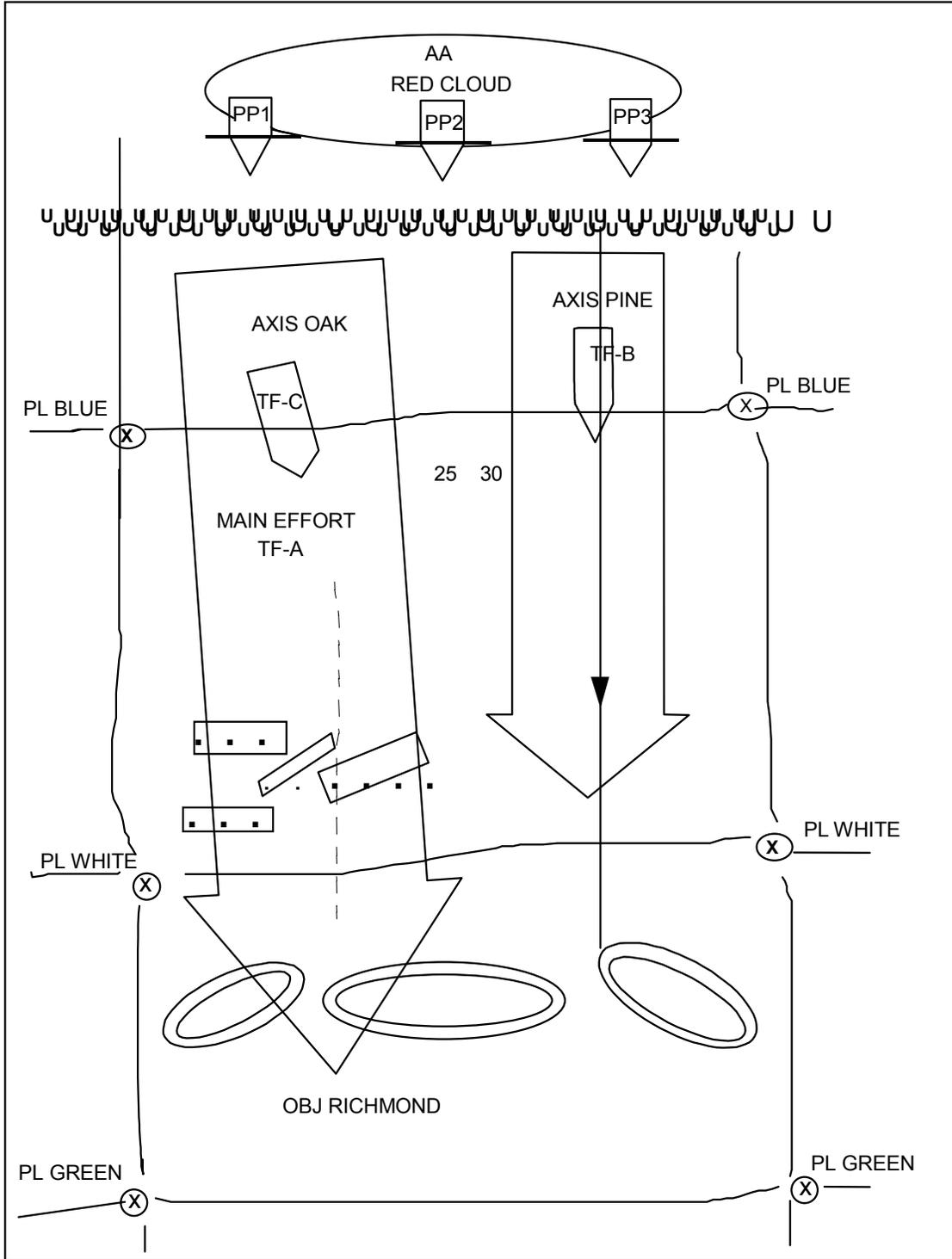


Figure 4-1. General Scenario FTX

**Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario**

<b>Event</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Estimated Time</b>
<u>Module 1</u>		
1	Receive a Bridge WO	15 minutes
2	Receive a Bridge Movement Order	30 minutes
3	Plan and Issue a Movement Order	2.5 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	6 hours
5	Occupy an AA	4 hours
6	Receive a Brigade WO	15 minutes
7	Receive a Brigade OPORD	2 hours
8	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 2</u>		
9	Conduct Precombat Operations	20 hours
	Plan/Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	8 hours
	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	4 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Estimate	3 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Annex	1 hour
10	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 3</u>		
11	Monitor the Conduct of the Attack, and Coordinate and Issue FRAGOs, as appropriate	9.5 hours
<u>Module 4</u>		
12	Move to the AA	4 hours
13	Conduct a Final AAR	2 hours
*	Defend Against an Air Attack	
*	Control Combat Formations	
*	Prepare an OPORD	
*	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	
*	Manage Battlefield Stress	
*	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	
*	Perform PMCS	
*	Operate a Net Control Station	
*	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel, Voice Radio Station	
	ENDEX	
		<b>Total time: 69 hours</b>
<b>*These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</b>		

### Movement Order

1. SITUATION. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn to vicinity NK 403087. It is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack. The division is moving to occupy an assembly area (AA) in preparation of combat operations.
2. MISSION. The 25th Brigade moves by tactical road march via route Monroe, commencing 011600 hours to AA vicinity NK 243567. The order of march is TF A, TF B, and TF C. The interval between serials is 30 minutes. Close on the AA no later than 011900 hours.
3. EXECUTION.
  - a. Concept of Movement. TF A will be the lead element with assistance from the military police (MP) for traffic control. TF B will follow 30 minutes after TF A. Brigade HQ will follow 30 minutes after TF B. TF C will follow 30 minutes after brigade HQ.
  - b. Tasks to Subordinate Units. The MPs will provide traffic control for the brigade movement.
  - c. Detailed Timings. None.
  - d. Coordinating Instructions.
    - (1) Start point (SP) NK 243567 at 011600 hours.
    - (2) Route Monroe command post (CP) is at NK 248560.
    - (3) Quartering party is the 25th Battalion.
    - (4) Vehicle markings are according to the unit SOP.
    - (5) Additional information, as required.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Per the unit SOP.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
  - a. Command.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI) are in effect.
    - (2) Visual signals according to the unit SOP.

**Figure 4-2. Movement Order**

4. General Situation.
  - a. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear, is being reinforced, and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM)

indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. This exercise is conducted under all environments during both day and night operations. The company is operating in an arid environment. The company will operate under threat of NBC attacks, ground or air attacks, indirect fire, and electronic warfare (EW).

c. This exercise is conducted under Threat Level I, II, or III attacks.

d. The company should be prepared to relocate at least every three to four days.

e. The unit should be prepared to move by echelons while continuing to provide support to the assigned area.

5. Special Situation.

a. The lead TF encounters an unexpected obstacle that prevents bypass. Enemy contact has been made. The brigade commander gives the following fragmentary order (FRAGO):

“TF, conduct breaching operations and continue the attack.”

b. After completing the breaches, the TF receives fire from an enemy position and encounters complex obstacles that prevent bypass. The attack is stalled. The unit is ordered to move in.

6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and Observers/Controllers. The battalion commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) who will be the trainer and the primary evaluator can conduct this task. At least one other observer/controller (O/C) is required for each engineer platoon and OPFOR platoon involved in this FTX.

b. Opposing Forces.

(1) OPFOR is required for the exercise to simulate Threat Level II and III activities.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) The Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES) can be used, or the trainer and O/C can assess the damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. Each trainer and O/C needs a vehicle and a radio. Radios are also required for OPFOR vehicles during mounted operations.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending on the local training area, an area with a minimum dimension of 15 x 6 kilometers for the hasty attack is desirable. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow an evaluation of the unit ability to conduct a terrain analysis and to select an appropriate course of action.

e. Consolidated Support Requirements. Company support requirements can be calculated by adding the total of the requirements for each participating subordinate element. See Table 4-3.

**Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 5-1-E0001**

<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (See the note below.)</b>			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>Class IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the FTX.</b>			

7. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. Table 4-4 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that are used to evaluate the FTX.

**Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating FTX 5-1-E0001**

<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Task Number</b>
Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion)	34-1-2005.05-T01A
Maintain Operations Security	71-2-0332.05-T01A
Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)	05-1-0001
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	05-1-0500
Plan Breaching Operations	05-1-0520
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	05-2-0301
Prepare for a Chemical Attack	3-2-C202.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Actions	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations	43-2-0001.05-T01A
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.05-T01A
Perform Field-Sanitation Measures	08-2-R315.05-T01A
Transport Casualties	08-2-C316.05-T01A
Provide Food-Service Support	10-2-0317.05-T01A
Provide Company Supply Support	10-2-0320.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Action	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Prepare an Engineer Annex	05-1-0003
Prepare an Operations Order	05-1-0008
Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	05-1-0027
Report Obstacle Information	05-1-0025
Report Engineer Information	05-1-0026
Analyze Battlefield Information	05-1-0415
Control Combined Arms Breaching	05-1-0048
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	05-2-1018
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	11-3-0214.05-T01A
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	11-5-0050.05-T01A
Establish External Communications	11-5-0121.05-T01A
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	11-5-1102.05-T01A
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	08-2-R303.05-T01A
Report Casualties	12-1-0403.05-T01A
Conduct Replacement Operations	12-1-0405.05-T01A

## CHAPTER 5

### Training and Evaluation Outlines

The T&EOs for the unit are listed in Figure 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

#### Develop Intelligence

Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance (05-2-0408) .....	5-3
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A).....	5-6
Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A).....	5-8

#### Deploy/Conduct Maneuver

Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-2-0908) .....	5-11
Reorganize as Infantry (05-2-1200).....	5-14
Fight as Infantry (05-2-1215).....	5-16
Establish a Hasty Position (05-3-1226).....	5-22
React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A).....	5-24
Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A) .....	5-26
Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A) .....	5-31
Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A).....	5-34
React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A) .....	5-38
Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A).....	5-40
Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (07-3-1135.05-T01A).....	5-43
Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A).....	5-45
Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A).....	5-48

#### Protect the Force

Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A) .....	5-50
Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A) .....	5-53
Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A) .....	5-55
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A).....	5-57
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A).....	5-59
Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A).....	5-61
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A).....	5-63
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A) .....	5-65
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A) .....	5-67
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A).....	5-69
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A) .....	5-71
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A) .....	5-75
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301).....	5-77
Direct Survivability Construction (05-2-0510).....	5-79
Control Construction of Survivability Positions (05-2-0518).....	5-81
Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911).....	5-83
Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-3-0113).....	5-86
Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210).....	5-89
Construct a Protective Obstacle (05-3-0230) .....	5-91
Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-0904.05-R01A).....	5-93
Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-0302) .....	5-96
Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A).....	5-99
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A) .....	5-103
Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A).....	5-105
Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A).....	5-107
Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-	

C221.05-T01A) .....	5-109
Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A).....	5-113
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>	
Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP) (05-1-0606).....	5-115
Conduct Administrative Operations (05-2-1007).....	5-117
Provide Emergency Treatment (08-2-0313.05-T01A).....	5-120
Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-0314.05-T01A).....	5-123
Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A) .....	5-126
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A) .....	5-129
Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A).....	5-132
Provide Food Service Support (10-2-0317.05-T01A).....	5-135
Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A).....	5-138
Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A) .....	5-140
Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A).....	5-142
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A).....	5-144
Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A).....	5-146
Report Casualties (12-1-0403.05-T01A).....	5-148
Conduct Replacement Operations (12-1-0405.05-T01A).....	5-150
Provide Legal Support (12-1-0410.05-T01A) .....	5-152
Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program (16-1-1001.05-T01A) .....	5-155
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A).....	5-157
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A) .....	5-159
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>	
Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (05-1-0008) .....	5-163
Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721).....	5-166
Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company) (05-2-0002).....	5-168
Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008) .....	5-172
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018).....	5-174
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A) .....	5-178
Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A) .....	5-180
Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A) .....	5-182
Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A) .....	5-184

**Figure 5-1. List of T&EO's**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
Support Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance (05-2-0408)  
(FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company plans and directs an engineer reconnaissance of a designated area. The area is secure, but enemy contact is possible. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company plans and directs platoon reconnaissance missions to gather sufficient information to fulfill the reconnaissance objectives. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The company plans the reconnaissance mission as defined in the battalion operation order (OPORD).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathered supporting intelligence data, such as map products and aerial photos.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units have access to Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) and All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) products to evaluate the plan and to assist in conducting the reconnaissance.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Established reconnaissance objectives, the main supply route (MSR), obstacle locations, general trafficability, decontamination points, and bivouac sites.</li> <li>c. Identified the platoon to perform the mission.</li> <li>d. Established the time, distance, and size of the zone or route to reconnoiter.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander determines the reconnaissance method.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected route reconnaissance when time was a critical factor.</li> <li>b. Selected zone reconnaissance when cross-country trafficability was important.</li> <li>c. Selected an area reconnaissance when the mission required specific information about a defined area.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: An area reconnaissance is more thorough and time-consuming than a zone reconnaissance.</b></p> <p>* 3. The company commander briefs the platoon on the reconnaissance mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conveyed the objective of the reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Defined the area or route to cover.</li> <li>c. Described the methods of reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Directed a hasty or deliberate reconnaissance.</li> <li>e. Provided additional guidance (such as, attention to fords, bridges, bivouac sites, and contaminated areas).</li> <li>f. Ensured that checkpoints were positioned for progress reports, assistance, and communications checks.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader ensures that unit members have the minimum-essential material needed to conduct the mission.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Ensured that unit members had a map of the area, overlay paper, a compass, and a tape measure.</p> <p>b. Ensured that unit members received the appropriate forms: Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1248, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, and 1711-R.</p> <p>c. Ensured that a secure mode, communications check radio was on hand.</p> <p>* 5. The company operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) reviews the reconnaissance report.</p> <p>a. Ensured that the platoon accomplished the objective.</p> <p>b. Ensured that members recorded dimensions (in meters) on the overlay; for example, the road width, bridges, overhead clearance, constrictions to travel way, fords, tunnels, or underpasses.</p> <p>c. Ensured that members recorded and annotated critical terrain features and obstacles using the appropriate symbols on the overlay at their geographical location (such as, slopes, curves, fords, ferries, bridges, reduction in travel way, and constrictions).</p> <p>* 6. The company operations NCO updates the company terrain analysis and overlay. He prepares to brief the commander on the results of the reconnaissance mission.</p> <p>* 7. The company commander briefs the battalion commander and staff on the mission. He submits all reports to the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) within the time constraints.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units can submit reports using digital means to assist the commander in the decision-making process. Appropriate DA forms are submitted at a later time according to the Standardization Agreement (STANAG) and the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0410	Manage Engineer Reconnaissance Operations
05-2-0413	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-3-0405	Perform a Target Reconnaissance
05-3-0407	Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams

**TASK:** Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.40)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy equipment and documents have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, and radios.</li> <li>b. Annotated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture.</li> <li>d. Noted the capturing unit.</li> <li>e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag if the items were taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader reports the capture of equipment and documents to higher HQ.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents.</li> <li>b. Stated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Identified the capturing unit.</li> <li>d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment.</li> <li>b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarter and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)  
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 24-33)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-19.30)  
 (FM 34-60)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic-warfare (EW) measures and air and ground reconnaissance elements. The element can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising the elements main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders check or perform information security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>b. Prohibited fraternization with civilians.</li> <li>c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection.</li> <li>d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information.</li> <li>e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.</li> <li>f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concealed and camouflaged with natural materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground or air observation.</li> <li>b. Moved on covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick.</li> <li>d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit position.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged earth berms.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were erected.</p> <p>d. Evaded crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads.</p> <p>e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions.</p> <p>f. Ensured that vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted.</p> <p>g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage.</p> <p>h. Evaded movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection.</p> <p>4. The element employs the company net control station (NCS) and enforces communications security (COMSEC).</p> <p>a. Enforced signal operation instructions (SOI) and signal supplemental instructions (SSI) procedures, such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. Ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy.</p> <p>b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures.</p> <p>c. Followed COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence.</p> <p>d. Followed procedures for operations during jamming.</p> <p>e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service.</p> <p>f. Used visual signals according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>5. The element employs physical security measures.</p> <p>a. Employed observation posts (OPs).</p> <p>b. Employed counterreconnaissance patrols.</p> <p>c. Followed stand-to procedures.</p> <p>d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted.</p> <p>e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire.</p> <p>f. Used the challenge and password.</p> <p>g. Limited access into the area of the unit.</p> <p>h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.</p> <p>i. Picked up litter.</p> <p>j. Employed air guards.</p> <p>* 6. All leaders enforce noise and light discipline.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-2-0908)  
 (FM 3-90.1) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, a unit is directed to move to a new location and establish an assembly area (AA). Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party departs ahead of the main body of the unit and completes all tasks in the new AA before the main body arrives. The unit moves all personnel and equipment to the assigned position within the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader organizes the quartering party.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).</li> <li>b. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit.</li> <li>c. Selected subordinate-element representatives according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>d. Organized a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance party from the NCOIC, the security element, and the subordinate-element representatives to satisfy the threat conditions.</li> <li>e. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>g. Reviewed the unit SOP and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>h. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the unit SOP or TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The quartering party conducts rehearsals on minesweeping operations, actions on contact for the security teams, and movement guide procedures.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Conduct a rehearsal using one of the following rehearsal types: the confirmation brief, the back brief, the combined arms rehearsal, the battle drill, or the SOP rehearsal.</b></p> <p>* 3. The quartering party leader conducts a map reconnaissance identifying the start point (SP), potential ambush sites, checkpoints (CPs), rest stops, and the AA.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The route used by the quartering party can be the same as the route used by the main body of the unit, as long as security is maintained along the route. If security is not maintained, the main body should conduct a route clearance to the new AA.</b></p> <p>4. The quartering party prepares the vehicles for the convoy.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>b. Loaded vehicles according to the load plan.</p> <p>c. Prepared troop-carrying vehicles for combat survivability by covering the floors with a double layer of sandbags.</p> <p>d. Maintained a guard force to prevent theft and sabotage.</p> <p>* 5. The quartering party leader briefs convoy personnel.</p> <p>a. Briefed the convoy route, to include the medical- and maintenance-support locations and the destination.</p> <p>b. Provided a strip map to each vehicle commander (or driver).</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units input routes and checkpoints into the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System by using an overlay message and/or a long format message according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <p>c. Briefed the prescribed march rate, the catch-up speed, and the distance between the vehicles.</p> <p>d. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures.</p> <p>e. Briefed limited-visibility movement procedures.</p> <p>f. Briefed the chain of command and radio frequency.</p> <p>6. The quartering party relocates to the new AA.</p> <p>a. Traveled separately from, and ahead of, the main body.</p> <p>b. Reported route limitations and other specified command interest items to the next higher element.</p> <p>7. The quartering party reconnoiters the area and notifies the commander of the conditions.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units update the enemy locations, mined areas, and NBC contaminated areas on the FBCB2 System to update the situational awareness (SA) and common operational picture (COP).</b></p> <p>a. Reported the position of enemy forces.</p> <p>b. Located the areas containing mines, booby traps, and NBC contamination.</p> <p>c. Evaluated terrain conditions, to include trafficability, cover and concealment, and the availability of adequate routes into and out of the AA.</p> <p>d. Evaluated the communication system required for the AA.</p> <p>* 8. The quartering party leader notifies the commander of the condition of the area.</p> <p>a. Received orders and prepared the area for the main body (satisfactory conditions).</p> <p>b. Requested additional instructions from the next higher commander and moved to the alternate AA or found another location and repeated subtask 7 (unsatisfactory conditions).</p> <p>9. The quartering party prepares the area to receive the main body.</p> <p>a. Secured the area.</p> <p>b. Marked or removed any obstacles and mines.</p> <p>c. Organized the area, divided it into sectors for each unit, and selected locations for the command post.</p> <p>d. Improved and marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes.</p> <p>e. Marked vehicle positions.</p> <p>10. Each element representative from the quartering party guides his element, without delay, from the release point (RP) to the sector of that element of the AA (mounted, if possible).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams

**TASK:** Reorganize as Infantry (05-2-1200)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion commander directs the unit to reorganize as infantry in a contemporary operating environment. A time schedule is provided. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company reorganizes into combat trains and combat elements. The company is prepared to conduct infantry operations within the specified time requirements. The digital units can send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander initiates a reorganization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a warning order (WO) and performed troop-leading procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed a tentative plan based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) while subordinate units prepared for infantry operations.</li> <li>(2) Conducted a reconnaissance in order to complete the plan and verbally issued the completed order in a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) format.</li> <li>(3) Conducted the appropriate equipment and troop inspections.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Evaluated the status of the ongoing engineer missions and issued instructions for the termination of those missions.</li> <li>c. Organized the company into two elements (combat and combat trains), designated the composition of each element, and determined the assembly location and time for each element.</li> <li>d. Assigned command and control (C2) responsibilities for each combat element.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander organizes the combat elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Retained the existing organizational structure of the engineer platoon as the basic fighting element.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Platoons are configured internally according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Coordinated with battalion personnel for augmentation from maneuver and fire support elements.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans to incorporate them within the combat element, and determined their missions. Coordinated the command and support relationships and the combat service support (CSS) requirements and procedures.</li> <li>d. Assembled the combat element in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the designated time.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The company commander organizes the combat trains element.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Coordinated with the battalion for augmentation from combat support elements. b. Coordinated with augmentation forces, prepared plans, incorporated them into the combat trains, and determined the— (1) Missions of the augmentation forces. (2) C2 procedures. (3) CSS requirements and procedures. (4) Requirements for additional Class V supplies required for organic weapons and augmenting mortars, including antitank systems. c. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnaround areas and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation. d. Determined the disposition of engineer equipment and operators. e. Assembled combat train elements in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the time designated by the commander.  * 4. The company commander designates the composition of combat and combat trains elements.  * 5. The company commander reports that the unit is prepared to receive infantry missions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-1068	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Fight as Infantry (05-2-1215)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment an element has received an operation order (OPORD) to reorganize as infantry and is preparing to engage in combat operations. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element organizes platoons for combat and conducts defensive or retrograde operations according to higher headquarters (HQ) directives. The digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means, providing an updated common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander conducts troop-leading procedures after receiving the OPORD to fight as infantry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the mission and planned the use of any available time following the 1/3- to 2/3-time rule.</li> <li>b. Issued a warning order and ensured that all leaders were kept informed of their duties.</li> <li>c. Consulted with the leaders and made tentative plans.</li> <li>d. Initiated the necessary movement to prepare the subordinate units for the upcoming mission and incorporated them into it.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to initiate these actions.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Reconnoitered the area of operations.</li> <li>f. Incorporated any additional details concerning the operation (following a reconnaissance mission) and completed the plan.</li> <li>g. Supervised the preparation for and the execution of the mission.</li> <li>h. Issued the order for the mission, in verbal or written form.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander orders the company to conduct defensive operations.</p> <p>* 3. The company commander posts security elements to provide local security.</p> <p>4. The company identifies the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The key terrain.</li> <li>b. The enemy avenue of approach.</li> <li>c. The location of the company battle position (BP), the company target reference points (TRPs), and the engagement area (EA).</li> <li>d. The limits of the company BP and the company or team sectors of fire.</li> <li>e. The location of the artillery preplotted targets.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. The primary and supplementary firing positions which—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enabled the company to deliver effective fire on TRPs and the EA at optimal ranges.</li> <li>(2) Provided long-range observation and interlocking fire between the adjacent units.</li> <li>(3) Provided a line of sight to other company or team BPs to provide mutually supporting fire.</li> <li>(4) Provided cover and concealment.</li> </ol> <p>g. Covered and concealed routes between the primary and supplementary firing positions.</p> <p>h. Covered and concealed routes into and out of the primary BP to subsequent BPs.</p> <p>i. The locations for observation posts (OPs) to provide observation of the platoon sector of fire.</p> <p>j. The location of existing obstacles and the positions for reinforcing the obstacles.</p> <p>* 5. The company commander develops a rough draft of a company or team fire plan.</p> <p>* 6. The company commander returns to the assembly area (AA) or moves the company to the rear of the BP, meets with the subordinate leaders, and issues an OPORD.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP, using the rough draft of the fire plan or a terrain model as a guide (in the AA).</li> <li>b. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP from a vantage point, using the rough draft of the fire plan as a guide (in the BP).</li> </ol> <p>7. The company or team moves to the rear and the flanks of the assigned BP.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved to a hidden position at the rear of the BP and executed actions at the halt.</li> <li>b. Manned the company OPs.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The company or team commander issues a five-paragraph oral OPORD from a vantage point using the rough sketch of the fire plan.</p> <p>* 9. The platoon leaders return to their units and, using hand-and-arm signals, have the drivers start their engines.</p> <p>*10. The company or team commander issues orders for occupying the BP.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ordered the platoon leader to position the vehicles, without leaving tracks, in fighting positions that were difficult for the enemy to detect.</li> <li>b. Checked the consolidated range cards and sketches of the platoon fire plans to ensure that there were no weak points between the platoon or flank companies.</li> <li>c. Finalized the fire plan in relation to the terrain to ensure that the EA was set on the enemy avenue of approach, covered by mutually supporting interlocking fire from platoons, and located between flank companies.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the flank companies to ensure coverage.</li> <li>e. Forwarded the company fire plan to the battalion task force (TF) commander for a final check of mutually supporting interlocking fire covering the EA.</li> <li>f. Received reports from the platoon leaders regarding the established platoon BPs and reported the information to the battalion TF.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The reports are submitted within the defend-by time stated in the OPORD. The defend-by time is a calculated estimate of when the enemy may attack. The enemy may attack before or after this time.</b></p> <p>g. Referred to the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors, and ordered the platoons to continue to improve their BP.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Do the most critical tasks first in case the enemy attacks before the defend-by time.</b></p> <p>*11. The company or team commander performs tactical planning and plans for a deliberate or hasty occupation of a BP in a built-up area based on the factors of the METT-TC.</p> <p>a. Conducted a reconnaissance of the BP and analyzed the threat force method of attacking a built-up area.</p> <p>b. Analyzed the BP to identify the—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The location of checkpoints, phase lines, and building numbers, as identified in the OPORD or FRAGO.</li> <li>(2) Observation sites and fields of fire on the enemy avenue of approach.</li> <li>(3) Primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions on the perimeter of the built-up area.</li> <li>(4) Positions that would provide cover and concealment.</li> <li>(5) Location of OPs that provide 360-degree security for a three-dimensional battlefield.</li> <li>(6) Covered and concealed routes into and out of firing positions and BPs that could not be blocked by blow down from structures.</li> <li>(7) Location of obstacles (existing and reinforcing), buildings with basements, fire hazards, sewers, viaducts, or bridges.</li> <li>(8) Structures that dominate the built-up area.</li> <li>(9) Locations of the firing positions, in depth, throughout the built-up area.</li> <li>(10) Areas to integrate the dismounted infantry into the company or team defense.</li> </ol> <p>c. Coordinated with adjacent units for dismounted support (as necessary) and ensured that units were tied in with the company or team forces.</p> <p>d. Upgraded the hasty defense and improved the BP, as time permitted.</p> <p>e. Planned for indirect fire in the EA and along the possible avenue of approach, in front of and behind obstacles. The fire support team (FIST) planned the smoke.</p> <p>*12. The company or team commander develops a company or team fire plan.</p> <p>a. Developed a fire plan as part of a hasty or deliberate BP occupation.</p> <p>b. Located platoons and oriented the company or team.</p> <p>c. Developed a fire plan that included the company or team sector, the platoon and OP positions, obstacles, indirect-fire targets, and final protection fire (FPF), if allocated.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the platoon fire plans were received in a timely manner. Made an updated copy of the company or team fire plan for the executive officer (XO) and the platoon leaders (as time permitted).</p> <p>e. Verified the plan by conducting rehearsals for counterattack missions, based on METT-TC factors.</p> <p>f. Upgraded the fire plan, to include the fire plans for platoon supplementary firing positions.</p> <p>g. Forwarded a copy of the fire plan to the higher HQ.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Check the complete direct- and indirect-fire plan as if you are the enemy attacking the position. Look for weak points in the defense and make corrections.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*13. The company or team commander and the platoon leaders organize the EA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered the EA (physically), covering as many options as possible to mass fire. Included the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy avenue of approach.</li> <li>(2) Locations of existing and reinforcing obstacles.</li> <li>(3) Key terrain.</li> <li>(4) TRPs.</li> <li>(5) Artillery preplots.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Organized the EA to mass direct and indirect fire. The obstacles were tied into terrain and hidden to slow the forward velocity of the enemy regiment.</li> <li>c. Organized fire in the EA, 800 to 2,000 meters from the defending company or team, based on METT-TC factors. The fire covered the obstacles so that the breaching vehicles were engaged.</li> <li>d. Used fire to interlock.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The platoons and the company or team mutually supported each other with direct fire.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Positioned the company or team around the EA. Centered one company or platoon the EA and one was positioned on both the right and left flanks.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the TRPs were marked for easy reference. Used the existing terrain, when possible.</li> <li>g. Shifted platoons or firing positions to cover the dead space and weak points.</li> <li>h. Developed an obstacle plan that— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Tied obstacles into existing terrain features.</li> <li>(2) Slowed the enemy movement.</li> <li>(3) Concealed obstacles from the enemy.</li> <li>(4) Included mine fighting positions that could have been destroyed or used to the enemy advantage.</li> <li>(5) Positioned obstacles on the enemy main avenue(s) of approach.</li> <li>(6) Covered obstacles by directing artillery to the front and rear of them.</li> <li>(7) Placed obstacles in the EA so that the personnel in the rear and on the flanks could fire simultaneously into the front of the enemy regiment, using direct and indirect massed fire. Repositioned personnel stopped in front of the obstacles.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>*14. The platoon leaders brief the company or team commander on the EAs in each sector and any changes made to the origin.</p> <p>*15. The company or team commander executes the company defensive mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Acknowledged the report or mission from the battalion TF commander.</li> <li>b. Analyzed the spot report (SPOTREP) or mission using METT-TC factors to determine the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Size of the enemy force.</li> <li>(2) Location of the force in relation to the company or team position.</li> <li>(3) Direction of enemy movement.</li> <li>(4) Avenue(s) of approach that the enemy could use to enter the EA of the company or team sector or the battalion TF.</li> <li>(5) Enemy arrival time at the company or team trigger point.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Alerted the OPs with a SPOTREP, which included all information given by the battalion TF commander and any additional information.</li> <li>d. Directed the company or team to remain in hidden positions until the OP identified the source of smoke and/or dust columns or sounds.</li> <li>e. Ordered the company or team and platoons to immediately prepare to engage the enemy.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Received SPOTREPs from platoon leaders.  g. Reported to the battalion TF commander.  h. Controlled indirect fire on the enemy as they advanced.  <b>NOTE: This step may also be performed by the FIST.</b>  i. Ordered platoons into hull-down positions, gave the order to fire, and returned platoons to the hull-down position after the enemy was destroyed.</p> <p>*16. The company or team commander receives SPOTREPs from the platoon leaders containing the number and types of vehicles that reached the company or team breaking point if the enemy elements are too strong. The SPOTREP may also contain orders from the battalion TF commander to displace to a subsequent BP.  a. Requested FPF, if scheduled.  b. Took direction from the battalion TF commander on whether to continue the mission or displace. If the battalion TF gave no guidance, the company commander or team commander coordinated with the flank company or teams and displaced.  <b>NOTE: The company or team commander must coordinate with the flank company or teams so that they are not flanked by the enemy.</b></p> <p>17. The company or team commander receives a FRAGO from the TF commander ordering a counterattack.  a. Conducted prep-to-fire checks.  b. Checked the weapon systems for proper loading.</p> <p>*18. The company or team commander coordinates with platoon leaders regarding the continuation of the mission.</p> <p>*19. The company or team commander monitors the mission.  a. Determined the size, type, and location of enemy elements.  b. Identified locations of enemy or friendly mines and obstacles.  c. Determined the most covered and concealed routes for the company or team to assault the flanks of the enemy without masking the fire of supporting elements.</p> <p>*20. The counterattack company or team commander coordinates the counterattack route with the defending company or teams (if deviating from the OPORD route).</p> <p>*21. The defending company or team commanders alert their platoons that the counterattacking force is going to attack the enemy from the right or left flank or from the rear.</p> <p>*22. The defending company or team commanders remind their defending platoon leaders of the restrictive fire line (RFL) and to control the direct fire.</p> <p>23. The counterattacking company or team stays outside of or on the far side of the RFL.</p> <p>*24. Upon receiving the order to counterattack, the company or team commander—  a. Ordered the company or team to begin the counterattack along the identified routes.  b. Ordered the company or team to a position from which it could engage the enemy flank or rear (for counterattack by fire).  c. Ordered the company or team to move rapidly to the flank or rear position of the enemy trail battalions and close in on them, firing at high speed (for counterattack by fire and maneuver). Used the following techniques:  (1) The tanks, if available, led and destroyed the enemy tanks.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) The armored personnel carriers (APCs) followed and destroyed light vehicles and the dismounted infantry. (3) The defending company or team commanders controlled fire behind the RFL. d. The defending companies of the battalion TF continued to fire upon the enemy and halted the enemy elements advancing from the front. 25. The company or team conducts consolidation and reorganization activities to continue the mission. *26. The company or team commander reports to the higher HQ according to the field standing operating procedure (SOP). <b>NOTE: The digital units send reports and unit locations and update the COP to provide SA to units operating in the area.</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1000	Conduct Logistics Operations
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** Establish a Hasty Position (05-3-1226)  
 (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, the element is ordered by the company commander to halt for an indefinite period. The element leader orders the subordinate elements to establish hasty fighting positions. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon establishes local security and tenable defensive positions, which provides early warning and protection from enemy attack. The digital units update friendly locations and send and receive reports or orders using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The platoon is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders conduct a reconnaissance of tentative fighting positions. The—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Drivers stopped the vehicles in covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>b. Personnel dismounted and assumed tentative, hasty fighting positions.</li> <li>c. Leaders checked the tentative positions.</li> <li>d. Leaders designated sectors and general locations for observation posts (OPs), vehicles, and designated critical weapons systems.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: At night, element leaders take special precautions in designating positions. They reconnoiter the area first, position the OPs, and then have guides bring the other members into position.</b></p> <p>2. The designated security or OP team moves to an assigned position and sets up security.</p> <p>3. The element prepares designated positions.</p> <p>* 4. Vehicle commanders guide the vehicles into hull-down, covered and concealed positions using existing reverse slopes, ravines, saddles, ditches, and draws.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader assigns each vehicle a primary forward position, at least one alternate position, and a sector of fire.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader assigns each rifle team to a primary and alternate position. He assigns crew-served weapons a sector of fire and has antitank weaponry cover likely avenues of approach.</p> <p>7. Soldiers prepare prone positions at least 50 centimeters deep using holes and ditches if available.</p> <p>* 8. Leaders rapidly check positions selected by platoon members.</p> <p><b>NOTE: At this point, the element leader may begin a more deliberate defense. The platoon leader selects exact fighting positions, coordinates with adjacent</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
elements, and starts to prepare the range cards. Platoon members prepare positions according to the order of the element leader or the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). The digital units update the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) providing current situational awareness, according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert, "Incoming!" or a round impacts on or near their location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Within 2 seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The element leader gave the direction and distance to move; for example, "3 o'clock, 200 meters."</li> <li>b. Vehicle commanders repeated the "Incoming!" alert to squad personnel.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Personnel closed all hatches.</li> <li>(2) Drivers moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicles—                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Halted as close as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount.</li> <li>(2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel kept low and ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions.</li> <li>b. Protected any dismounted personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The element members move to designated rally points according to the element operation order (OPORD). 5. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point. 6. The element consolidates and reorganizes. * 7. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP) to higher headquarters (HQ). <b>NOTE: Digital units send the SHELREP using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-92)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to conduct a passage of lines. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy can attack by air, indirect fire, and up to company-sized (mounted or dismounted) forces. The unit may be augmented with additional maneuver, combat support (CS), or combat service support (CSS) assets. Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element coordinates with the stationary unit, exchanges all the required information, and reports the results of the coordination. Digital units send and receive the reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The passage is conducted at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). There is no compromise of security, and the battle handover is completed as specified. If available, the company uses digital equipment as necessary or as directed to accomplish the mission. No friendly unit suffers casualties or damage to equipment as a result of fratricide. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The Digital Navigation System equipment allows constant situational awareness (SA) between elements conducting a linkup, passage of lines, or a relief operation (any operation that involves friendly units moving toward each other) to aid navigation and fratricide prevention. For example, a moving squad or vehicle can monitor the location of a stationary unit and linkup site using the position updates and digital graphics displayed on the digital display. The stationary unit can also monitor the location of the moving unit as it moves along the prescribed route to the linkup point by monitoring position updates on the digital display. As the moving force closes on the linkup site, the stationary force is more aware of its presence and location, reducing the possibility of fratricide. The moving unit does the same type of monitoring to reduce fratricide potential. Once the moving unit nears the linkup location, the stationary unit should challenge it. This may be done digitally, visually, or with audible sounds using any prearranged signals. For example, the stationary unit can give the moving unit a series of flashes using an infrared source during limited visibility. The moving force responds with a precoordinated number of flashes. The challenge and password is also used between the two units, digitally or verbally.</b></p> <p>* 1. The commander receives an OPORD from higher headquarters (HQ) and initiates planning and coordination for the operation.</p> <p>* 2. The passing force commander meets the stationary unit commander and arranges for a specific time and location for coordinating the passage of respective companies (platoon leaders should be included).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The element conducts digital command and control (C2) of operations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained SA.</li> <li>b. Submitted reports and overlays.</li> <li>c. Directed movement, positioning, and fires.</li> </ol> <p>* 4. The leader or his representative coordinates the passage through and reentry of the lines with the forward unit leader or his representative.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the unit identification.</li> <li>b. Gave the times of departure and return.</li> <li>c. Gave the unit area of operations (AO).</li> </ol> <p>* 5. The stationary unit commander provides the leader or his representative with the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided terrain information.</li> <li>b. Provided known or suspected enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Provided likely enemy ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Provided the latest enemy activity.</li> <li>e. Provided detailed information on friendly positions.</li> <li>f. Provided obstacle locations.</li> <li>g. Provided the fire support plan.</li> <li>h. Provided unit support; for example, fire support, litter teams, guides, communications, or reaction forces.</li> <li>i. Provided signal operation instructions (SOI) information, the signal plan, the reentry signal, the running password, and procedures to be used by the unit and guide during departure and reentry.</li> <li>j. Provided the locations of the dismounting point (if needed), the company assembly area (AA), routes, and contact and passage points.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. Leaders of the two units must plan for and coordinate the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the exchange of enemy intelligence.</li> <li>b. Planned for the reconnaissance of positions and routes.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the passing unit scheme of maneuver of the passing unit.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the exchange of communication information.</li> <li>e. Planned for recognition signals for the passage.</li> <li>f. Planned for guides (down to squad level) and traffic control measures.</li> <li>g. Planned for security measures for the passage.</li> <li>h. Coordinated fire support responsibilities and fire plans.</li> <li>i. Coordinated the transfer of responsibility and actions on enemy contact during passage.</li> <li>j. Coordinated CSS.</li> </ol> <p>* 7. Leaders coordinate specific control measures for the passage.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included contact points.</li> <li>b. Included passage routes and lanes.</li> <li>c. Included passage points.</li> <li>d. Included release points (RPs).</li> <li>e. Included AAs (rearward passage).</li> </ol> <p>* 8. Leaders exchange call signs, frequencies, code words, signals, challenges, and passwords to be used at the battle handover line.</p> <p>* 9. The commander and leaders physically locate the following during the reconnaissance:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Located passage routes and lanes.</li> <li>b. Located passage points.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Located obstacle locations and safety lanes.</p> <p>d. Located RPs.</p> <p>e. Located AAs (for rearward passage).</p> <p>f. Located contact points.</p> <p>g. Located positions and actions of the stationary force during passage.</p> <p>h. Located CS and CSS elements, command posts (CPs), observation posts (OPs), and Javelin and mortar positions.</p> <p>*10. Both leaders ensure that their reconnaissance and other activities do not reveal the operation to the enemy. Stationary unit activities are continued as normal throughout the passage and continued after transfer of responsibility for the zone or sector.</p> <p>*11. The leader or his representative checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same or adjacent areas, and they exchange any information that will assist them with their operations.</p> <p>12. The unit arrives and moves into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting by the stationary company commander.</p> <p>*13. The leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Briefed the elements on what was happening and what was going to happen.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Briefed the elements on the ROE and the ROI.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Confirmed the chain of command.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Briefed the actions to be taken on contact.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">e. Briefed the actions to be taken in the absence of the leader.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">f. Provided the time schedule, the suspenses, and any limits on the actions.</p> <p>*14. The leader completes the final coordination according to task step 5 with the stationary unit leader or his representative at the CP.</p> <p>15. The company moves at the designated time to a covered and concealed position near the contact point.</p> <p>16. The elements link up with the guides that lead the security element from the contact points through the passage lanes and passage points to the RPs.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The movement technique used may make the clearing team unnecessary; for example, the bounding overwatch.</b></p> <p>17. The security element clears the area forward of the RPs to the first covered and concealed position.</p> <p>18. The company moves forward to the RPs after the area is cleared</p> <p>19. The guides identify and account for all vehicles or personnel passing through the passage points, contact points, and RPs.</p> <p>20. The company is counted through the RPs by the executive officer (XO), the first sergeant (1SG), or a platoon sergeant (PSG).</p> <p>21. Both leaders collocate at a point to observe critical areas, make timely decisions during the passage, and facilitate passage of responsibility for battle handover. Passage movement is continuous.</p> <p>22. The company moves beyond the friendly unit final protection fires (FPF). After this, a security halt may be executed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>23. The XO, 1SG, or PSG does not move forward from the RP until the leader is sure that he will not have to withdraw through the passage point.</p> <p>24. The companies move rapidly through the passage lanes to an AA or a new overwatch position.</p> <p>25. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI.</p> <p>26. The company or platoon reenters through the lines.</p> <p>27. The company halts and establishes security.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If in contact with the enemy, the company does not halt. The contact party or guides from the stationary unit lead the unit through the passage points, or long-range recognition signals are used to keep moving.</b></p> <p>28. The leader contacted the forward unit and informed it that the unit was ready to reenter.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The leader may remain outside friendly lines until daylight. Before reentry, if communications are not possible, a reconnaissance and security team contacts an OP, using the appropriate recognition signals or communication system. The OP then contacts the friendly unit leader. If no communications can be established and no OPs can be found, the leader directs a small security team to reconnoiter for the coordinated contact point.</b></p> <p>29. The leader directs a security team to the contact point when the message is acknowledged.</p> <p>30. The security team establishes contact with the guide using far-and-near recognition signals.</p> <p>31. The security team signals the company forward or goes back and leads the company to the passage point.</p> <p>32. The 1SG or XO and PSG counts and identifies each platoon as it passes through the passage point.</p> <p>33. The guides lead the unit, without halting, to an AA behind the friendly unit.</p> <p>34. The leader reports to the CP of the forward unit and gives the commander the tactical information in the commander's area of responsibility.</p> <p>35. The leader links up with the platoon in the AA and then leads the company back to a secure area for debriefing.</p> <p>36. The company or platoon conducts stationary unit activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established and manned contact points.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the passing unit and exchanged information listed in task steps 3 through 7.</li> <li>c. Selected guides to link up with the passing unit at the coordinated time.</li> <li>d. Provided CS and CSS to the unit, if required.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Support may include evacuation of casualties, fire support, and resupply of fuel and ammunition.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)  
 (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the main body of the element into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the main body of the element. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected personnel.</li> <li>b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew based on transportation and security requirements.</li> <li>c. Determined essential equipment needed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the location of the AA.</li> <li>b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA.</li> <li>c. Relayed the arrival time of the main body at the AA.</li> <li>d. Identified the march order.</li> <li>e. Relayed nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions.</li> <li>f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact.</li> <li>g. Established the MOPP level.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The quartering party moves along the march route.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained security.</li> <li>b. Reconnoitered the march route from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</li> <li>c. Monitored for NBC contamination.</li> <li>d. Marked obstacles and bypass routes.</li> <li>e. Reported critical information to the quartering party leader.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the arrival of the element.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location.</li> <li>b. Selected and posted guides in time to meet the main body.</li> <li>c. Marked entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>d. Marked vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Marked or removed mines and obstacles.                      f. Organized and posted local security.</p> <p>5. The element occupies the AA.                      a. Moved the covered and concealed quartering party guides to selected or designated areas without halting.                      b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces.</p> <p>6. The element establishes the AA perimeter.                      a. Established the priority of work, which may vary by the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).                      b. Positioned vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire.                      c. Established observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach.                      d. Established digital and FM communications between all positions using wire communications, if the time and situation permitted.                      e. Prepared range cards.                      f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions.                      g. Cleared the fields of fire.                      h. Camouflaged positions.                      i. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms and early warning devices.</p> <p>7. The element performs internal AA operations.                      a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment.                      b. Distributed ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment.                      c. Established personal hygiene and field sanitation sites.                      d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline.                      e. Instituted a rest plan for element members and leaders.                      f. Inspected the AA.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates with the elements on the left and the right as a minimum.                      a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements.                      b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and the elements signals.                      c. Coordinated local counterattacks.                      d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>* 9. Leaders develop contingency plans.                      a. Developed an evacuation plan.                      b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact.</p> <p>10. The unit conducts rehearsals.                      a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan.                      b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section

**TASK:** Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Upon receipt of an operation order (OPORD), the element moves to a new location given in the OPORD and conducts operations at that location. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Threat mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the start point (SP).</li> <li>b. Identified locations of friendly units.</li> <li>c. Identified potential ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Identified checkpoints (CPs).</li> <li>e. Identified sites to be used for scheduled halts.</li> <li>f. Indicated the release point (RP).</li> </ul> <p>2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dressed in the designated MOPP gear.</li> <li>b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm.</li> <li>c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices.</li> <li>d. Verified map information.</li> <li>e. Identified capacities of bridges and underpasses.</li> <li>f. Identified the location of culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>g. Prepared the map overlay.</li> <li>h. Computed the travel time.</li> <li>i. Prepared the strip map.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The convoy commander coordinates for required support with higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included military police (MP) support.</li> <li>b. Included medical support.</li> <li>c. Included fire support (FS).</li> <li>d. Included engineer support.</li> <li>e. Included maintenance contact team support.</li> <li>f. Included additional requirements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The element prepares vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>b. Corrected minor deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Reported major deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Hardened vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials.</li> <li>e. Covered unit identification markings on vehicles and personnel.</li> <li>f. Covered or removed reflective surfaces.</li> <li>g. Placed antennas at their lowest height.</li> <li>h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned cargo vehicle positions.</li> <li>b. Positioned control vehicles without setting a pattern.</li> <li>c. Assigned recovery vehicle positions.</li> <li>d. Arranged hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy.</li> <li>e. Specified passenger locations.</li> <li>f. Appointed air guards.</li> <li>g. Organized the trail party element.</li> <li>h. Provided vehicle position listings to the trail party leader.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The convoy commander briefs the convoy personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver.</li> <li>b. Identified the convoy chain of command.</li> <li>c. Detailed the convoy route.</li> <li>d. Specified the march rate and the catch-up speed.</li> <li>e. Specified convoy intervals.</li> <li>f. Identified the scheduled halts.</li> <li>g. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>h. Briefed immediate-action security measures.</li> <li>i. Briefed blackout condition procedures.</li> <li>j. Specified the location of medical support.</li> <li>k. Specified the location of maintenance support.</li> <li>l. Briefed communication procedures.</li> <li>m. Specified the location and the identification of the destination.</li> </ul> <p>7. The convoy crosses the SP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that vehicles had crossed the SP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the SP crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The convoy commander provides convoy information to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the SP crossing time.</li> <li>b. Reported the CP clearance, when crossed.</li> <li>c. Pointed out data that conflicted with the maps.</li> <li>d. Used the correct signal operation instructions (SOI) codes in all transmissions.</li> <li>e. Reported the RP crossing time.</li> </ul> <p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the designated march speed.</li> <li>b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals.</li> <li>c. Crossed CPs as scheduled.</li> <li>d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts.</p> <p>10. The company conducts a scheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time.</li> <li>b. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> <li>c. Moved vehicles off the road.</li> <li>d. Established local security.</li> <li>e. Performed PMCS.</li> <li>f. Inspected vehicle loads.</li> <li>g. Departed at the specified time.</li> </ul> <p>11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted the march column.</li> <li>b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ.</li> <li>c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> <li>d. Established local security.</li> <li>e. Reported the resumption of the march to higher HQ.</li> </ul> <p>12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a visual adjustment period.</li> <li>b. Prepared vehicles for blackout conditions.</li> <li>c. Maintained prescribed vehicle distances.</li> <li>d. Wore night vision goggles (specified personnel).</li> <li>e. Wore regular eye protection goggles.</li> <li>f. Used ground guides during poor visibility periods.</li> </ul> <p>13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the disabled vehicles.</li> <li>b. Repaired the disabled vehicles, when possible.</li> <li>c. Towed the vehicles, if necessary.</li> <li>d. Reported the status of the vehicles to the convoy commander.</li> </ul> <p>14. The convoy moves through urban areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions.</li> <li>b. Used close-column formation.</li> <li>c. Obeyed traffic control directions.</li> <li>d. Used direction guides at critical intersections.</li> </ul> <p>15. The convoy crosses the RP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
19-1-1102	Coordinate Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance
19-1-1201	Prepare Traffic Control Plan

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-20.98) (FM 34-2-1)  
 (FM 7-92)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a prepared kill zone. The enemy initiates the ambush with a casualty-producing device and a high volume of fire. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, the Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and the rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and reduce the combat power available to the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element reacts immediately to the ambush based on the type (near, far). The platoon disengages the element in the kill zone or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, and higher headquarters (HQ) and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: Leaders ensure that the ROE and the ROI are disseminated to subordinate personnel.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Personnel in the kill zone react to a near ambush (within hand grenade range).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Returned fire immediately; assumed covered positions; and threw fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades.</li> <li>b. Assaulted individually through the ambush using individual fire and movement immediately after the grenades detonated.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Personnel not in the kill zone react to a near ambush.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Initiated immediate suppressive fires against the enemy.</li> <li>c. Took up covered positions.</li> <li>d. Shifted fires as personnel in the kill zone assaulted through the ambush.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Personnel receiving fire in a far ambush (beyond hand grenade range) immediately return fire and take up covered positions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Suppressed or destroyed enemy crew-served weapons first.</li> <li>b. Obscured the enemy position with smoke.</li> <li>c. Sustained suppressive fires and shifted them as the assaulting squads fought through the enemy position.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Personnel not receiving fire react to a far ambush.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved by a covered and concealed route to a vulnerable flank of the enemy position.</li> <li>b. Assaulted using fire and movement techniques.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The element forward observer (FO) calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the element leader. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used indirect fires to isolate the enemy position.</li> <li>b. Adjusted fires on any retreating enemy.</li> </ul> * 6. The platoon leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the situation to higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Consolidated and reorganized as necessary.</li> <li>c. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted and employ indirect fires or air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation (unless required otherwise by enemy action or at the direction of higher headquarters [HQ]), and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) to subordinate leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission.</li> <li>b. Gave the WO immediately after being alerted for the mission.</li> <li>c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued.</li> <li>d. Addressed items not covered in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Specified the time and location to issue the OPORD.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader completes the plan and issues the march order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions.</li> <li>b. Identified the route, the SP, the RP, critical points, and other control points.</li> <li>c. Provided the order of movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units.</li> <li>d. Established security tasks for subordinate elements, to include all-around security and air guard coverage for the entire element.</li> <li>e. Addressed contingencies for actions on enemy contact.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to an enemy ambush; indirect fire; an air attack; a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Provided the soldiers with load guides.</li> <li>g. Ensured that subordinate leaders briefed their plans.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conducts the necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special-issue items.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Inspected personnel and vehicles for the proper load and equipment and their readiness to move.</p> <p>b. Completed a communications check using digital and FM radios to report the readiness of the unit element to move.</p> <p>4. The element conducts the road movement.</p> <p>a. Crossed the SP at the designated time.</p> <p>b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the march rate specified in the order or the unit SOP.</p> <p>c. Followed the prescribed route.</p> <p>5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement.</p> <p>a. Maintained all-around observation at all times, to include air guards.</p> <p>b. Oriented as directed to establish local security.</p> <p>6. The unit reports and reacts to enemy contact using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</p> <p>a. Reported and reacted according to directions in the OPORD.</p> <p>b. Reported and reacted according to the unit SOP.</p> <p>7. The unit halts.</p> <p>a. Conducted the halt at regular intervals according to the unit SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene.</p> <p>b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security.</p> <p>c. Reported all halts to the next higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT).</p> <p>d. Positioned vehicles in a herringbone formation.</p> <p>e. Dismounted personnel to provide local security.</p> <p>f. Checked the condition of personnel and equipment.</p> <p>g. Coordinated with the adjacent unit.</p> <p>h. Reported the status to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</p> <p>* 8. The leader controls the unit.</p> <p>a. Used visual, messenger, digital, or radio signals for control throughout the movement.</p> <p>b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order using the DRS.</p> <p>c. Used control measures from the order, and modified them as needed.</p> <p>9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order.</p> <p>a. Met the quartering party guide, if one was designated.</p> <p>b. Passed through the RP without halting.</p> <p>c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Food Service Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (07-3-1135.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL) (FM 3-21.71)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is part of a larger dismounted moving force that encounters a danger area that cannot be bypassed. The platoon must provide its own security. Rules of engagement (ROE) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prevents the enemy from surprising the main body. The element moves all personnel and equipment across the danger area. The platoon prevents decisive engagement by the enemy. The United States (US) forces comply with the ROE. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader directs the platoon to take action on encountering a danger area.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the point man signaled "danger area" and that it was relayed throughout the platoon.</li> <li>b. Halted the platoon and maintained local security.</li> <li>c. Moved forward to the point man and confirmed the danger area.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader directs the lead squad to reconnoiter the danger area and makes an estimate based on information received.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed the route for the platoon if the danger area could be bypassed.</li> <li>b. Controlled the crossing of the danger area with minimum time spent in or near the danger area.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Informed all squad leaders of the situation.</li> <li>(2) Designated the nearside and farside rally points.</li> <li>(3) Directed the positioning of the nearside security team.</li> <li>(4) Selected a crossing point that provided cover and concealment.</li> <li>(5) Assigned the farside security team.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader selects the farside clearing method based on observable terrain. The secured area must be large enough to allow full deployment of the remainder of the platoon.</li> <li>4. The nearside security team provides security.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Observed to the flanks.</li> <li>b. Overwatched the crossing of the farside security team.</li> <li>c. Warned of enemy approach before the main body was engaged.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The farside team reconnoiters the farside.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed the danger area once the nearside security team was in place.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Reconnoitered the farside and ensured that any terrain (small hills, folds, or streambeds) that might have concealed enemy positions was clear of the enemy.</li> <li>c. Established an observation post (OP) forward of the cleared area.</li> <li>d. Signaled to the squad leader that the area was clear; the message was relayed to the platoon leader.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element crosses the danger area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the method designated by the platoon leader: line (all at once), wedge (file), small groups, or individually.</li> <li>b. Used nearside security to overwatch the platoon crossing.</li> <li>c. Crossed the danger area quickly and quietly.</li> <li>d. Executed Battle Drill 2, React to Contact (Army Training and Evaluation Program [ARTEP] 7-8-DRILL) if contact was made.</li> <li>e. Established local security once across the danger area.</li> <li>f. Completed the crossing with the nearside security team crossing the danger area and regaining its positions in the formation.</li> </ul> <p>7. The platoon continues the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accounted for all members.</li> <li>b. Resumed tactical movement.</li> <li>c. Maintained the proper formation and personnel intervals.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to move cross-country, mounted or dismounted. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The element retains its ability to move. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader assigns areas of responsibility (AORs) during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned all squads to an AOR.</li> <li>b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual AORs.</li> <li>c. Ensured that there was all-around coverage of the platoon, including air guard.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader designates a route for the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Formed one or two wedges based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.</li> <li>b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. Maintained the rate of movement.</li> <li>c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader designates a movement technique to use that is based on METT-TC factors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a traveling-movement technique when enemy contact was not likely.</li> <li>b. Designated a traveling-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was possible.</li> <li>c. Designated a bounding-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was likely.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The element performs a traveling-movement technique.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> <li>b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> <li>c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted.</li> <li>d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element performs a traveling-overwatch-movement technique.</p> <p><b>NOTE: When dismounted, the lead element uses a traveling-overwatch-movement technique, and the trailing squads use a traveling-movement technique.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the main body of the platoon by 50 to 100 meters.</li> <li>b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the element; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart.</li> <li>c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</li> </ul> <p>7. The element performs a bounding-overwatch-movement technique.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch.</li> <li>b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.</li> </ul> <p>8. The bounding squad moves.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement.</li> <li>b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.</li> <li>c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed.</li> <li>d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operations security (OPSEC).</li> <li>e. Moved so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element.</li> <li>f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound to overwatch the succeeding bound.</li> <li>g. Informed the element leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch.</li> <li>h. Alerted the element leader and the overwatching element of any enemy that was detected, any obstacles that were encountered, or any danger areas.</li> </ul> <p>9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the movement of the bounding squad to its next overwatch position.</li> <li>b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route.</li> <li>d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed.</li> <li>e. Alerted the bounding squad and the element leader of any enemy that it detected.</li> <li>f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.</li> </ul> <p>10. The element maintains security during movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Maintained noise and light discipline. c. Observed sectors of fires to avoid any enemy that was approaching the platoon within 35 meters and any aircraft that was attacking the platoon without warning.  *11. Leaders use control measures during the movement. a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement. b. Positioned key weapons. c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement.  *12. The element leader controls movement of the elements. a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas. b. Used arm-and-hand signals once contact was made. c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made.  *13. The element leader knows the elements location at all times. a. Expressed the location of the platoon as a 6-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics. b. Knew the location of all the elements including the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements. Was accurate to plus or minus 100 meters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A)

(FM 7-22.7)

(AR 220-10)

(AR 600-38)

(AR 600-8)

(AR 600-8-14)

(AR 600-8-2)

(AR 600-8-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tasked to deploy to a theater of operations. The element is assigned the responsibility to process personnel for overseas movement. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element is administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified in the operation order (OPORD) or the letter of instruction (LOI).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) plans the preparation for oversea movement (POM).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established processing requirements.</li> <li>b. Established support requirements.</li> <li>c. Published the POM plan.</li> <li>d. Briefed the command group.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the POM with the brigade S1.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The S1 or the personnel and administration center (PAC) supervisor coordinates POM requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel) (G1), for personnel service company (PSC) support.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) for legal support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the medical department activity (MEDDAC) and the dental activity (DENTAC) for medical and dental support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the provost marshal (PM) for privately owned vehicle (POV) storage.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The S1 section participates in the POM process.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted liaison with the POM site commander.</li> <li>b. Briefed soldiers on POM procedures.</li> <li>c. Issued the POM checklist.</li> <li>d. Reviewed family care plans.</li> <li>e. Reviewed pay elections.</li> <li>f. Assisted soldiers in completing postal forms.</li> <li>g. Reviewed the POM checklist for completeness.</li> <li>h. Identified nonparticipants and nondeployable soldiers.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor conducts briefings for family members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated installation support.</li> <li>b. Established the briefing site and schedules.</li> <li>c. Published a family support packet.</li> <li>d. Monitored family support briefings.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of (or information on) radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives and analyzes the mission and identifies all unit tasks.</li> <li>* 2. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) as soon as possible to subordinate leaders.</li> <li>* 3. The element leader and the operations section make a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance or survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air- or indirect-fire support, and medical support and coordinated the element plan with units in the area of operations, if necessary.</li> <li>c. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance/recovery/Class IX support for the platoon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader orders units to start movement, if necessary.</li> <li>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters the operations area and performs a map reconnaissance as a minimum.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 6. The element leader completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader supervises preparations of the reconnaissance or survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.</p> <p>8. The element conducts a tactical road march or executes a traveling movement to the reconnaissance or survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and or mission required.</li> <li>b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that marking signs were facing toward friendly areas. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and the physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission.</li> <li>c. Determined the limits of the contaminated area. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission.</li> </ul> <p>9. The headquarters (HQ), if prescribed by the mission, assists the reconnaissance or survey unit recovery operations.</p> <p>*10. The element leader or operations officer, if prescribed by the mission, debriefs the returning reconnaissance or survey units and forwards the acquired information to higher HQ in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format, if required.</p> <p>*11. The radiological element leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation exposure status (RES) readings to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-1220	Conduct Fire and Maneuver Operations
05-3-1239	Plan and Control Indirect Fire
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader checks the accountability and serviceability of the NBC defense equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes.</li> <li>c. Identified equipment shortages.</li> <li>d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Donned masks and hoods within 15 seconds.</li> <li>b. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers take actions to protect themselves against an NBC attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up and used collective protective shelters (if available).</li> <li>b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability. Took the following into consideration:                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted?</li> <li>(2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> <li>(3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Collected and analyzed weather data. Took the following into consideration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was it day or night?</li> <li>(2) What were current weather conditions (see the chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)?</li> <li>(3) What were weather conditions 2, 4, and 6 hours in the future (see the CDM or weather report)?</li> </ul> c. Analyzed the element status and mission. Took the following into consideration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) What was the mission?</li> <li>(2) What was the work rate?</li> <li>(3) How long did the work take?</li> <li>(4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit?</li> <li>(5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The element protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification.</li> <li>b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, either their right or left ankles, and the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of their position.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters.</li> <li>b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover, consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.</b></p> <p>* 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP4.</li> <li>b. Ensured that individual and element fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators of a chemical or biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal).</li> <li>b. Ensured that soldiers put on their protective masks within 9 seconds.</li> <li>c. Assumed MOPP4 as soon as possible.</li> <li>d. Sought additional shelter, if available.</li> <li>e. Administered a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable).</li> <li>f. Administered nerve agent antidotes to selves (if applicable).</li> <li>g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed.</li> </ul> <p>2. Soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies.</li> <li>b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits.</li> <li>c. Applied prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted skin decontamination.</li> <li>b. Wiped down personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits.</li> <li>c. Conducted operator spray down of equipment.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that casualties were provided with medical care.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately.		
d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a strike warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike warning message.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Authenticated the call.</li> <li>b. Acknowledged the warning by returning the message.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Warned subordinate and affected units.</li> <li>b. Ensured that subordinates executed actions as directed.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions).</li> <li>b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment.</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Digital units ensured that the systems were prepared according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>h. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order.  2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Placed vehicles and equipment where the terrain shielding was best (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available). i. Used field-expedient shelters.  3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed individuals to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves.</li> <li>b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose rate).</li> <li>c. Ensured that radiac equipment operators checked the instruments.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, used sandbags on the vehicle floor).</li> <li>b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>c. Started continuous monitoring.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided stirring up dust.</li> <li>b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should have been buttoned up).</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>e. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-50)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke.</li> <li>b. Exploited threat smoke to conceal its own movements.</li> <li>c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat use of smoke.</li> <li>d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.</li> </ul> 2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit.</li> <li>b. Determined the wind direction and speed.</li> <li>c. Determined where to release the smoke and where it would travel.</li> <li>d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations.</li> <li>e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the smoke covered an area larger than the unit position.</li> <li>g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task).</li> </ul> 3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined what available target acquisition and guidance systems were effective in the smoke.</li> <li>b. Requested and used target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke.</li> </ul> * 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests a resupply of smoke munitions when required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves.</li> <li>b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles.</li> <li>c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.</li> <li>d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment.</li> </ul> <p>2. Designated personnel monitor fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments.</li> <li>b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible.</li> <li>c. Calculated the optimum time of exit.</li> <li>d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure.</li> <li>b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The unit leader submits reports according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Without warning, soldiers—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Closed their eyes immediately.</li> <li>(2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with their head toward the blast (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle).</li> <li>(3) Kept their heads and their faces down and helmets on.</li> <li>(4) Remained in a prone position until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. With warning, soldiers—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the best available shelter, such as fighting positions or inside shelters.</li> <li>(2) Moved to the shelter.</li> <li>(3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.</li> <li>(4) Kept clothing loosely fitted and their headgear on at all times.</li> <li>(5) Protected their eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> * 2. Leaders reorganize the unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</li> <li>b. Reestablished communications.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>d. Treated casualties.</li> <li>e. Reported casualties.</li> <li>f. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation.</li> <li>h. Implemented continuous monitoring.</li> <li>i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
j. Initiated an area damage control plan, as required. k. Extinguished all fires.  * 3. Leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational.  4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles. a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Performed operator maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.  5. Soldiers improve cover. a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-11.11)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the element to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, element decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination element is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The contaminated unit determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from staff and subordinate leaders.</li> <li>b. Established decontamination priorities.</li> </ul> <p>2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request, as a minimum, included the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Contaminated element designation.</li> <li>b. Contaminated element location.</li> <li>c. Contaminated element frequency and call sign.</li> <li>d. Time that the element became contaminated.</li> <li>e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that were contaminated.</li> <li>f. Type of contamination.</li> <li>g. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a element decontamination team).</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The contaminated unit leader coordinates with higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain the necessary support.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon).</p> <p>c. Coordinated with supporting units.</p> <p>d. Requested replacement MOPP gear.</p> <p>e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>* 4. The contaminated unit leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected—</p> <p>a. Provided adequate overhead concealment.</p> <p>b. Provided good drainage.</p> <p>c. Provided easy access and exit (but off the main routes).</p> <p>d. Provided the proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash down.</p> <p>e. Provided an area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both the vehicle washdown site and the MOPP gear exchange site).</p> <p>5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit).</p> <p>a. Requested operational decontamination support.</p> <p>b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination.</p> <p>c. Established communications with the decontamination element.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the decontamination element knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination sites.</p> <p>6. The contaminated element and supporting elements move to the decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated.</p> <p>b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site by the contaminated element.</p> <p>7. The elements prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <p>a. Set up the decontamination site.</p> <p>(1) The supporting decontamination element crew set up the vehicle washdown site.</p> <p>(2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site.</p> <p>(3) The remainder of the element prepared its equipment for decontamination.</p> <p>b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area.</p> <p>(1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</p> <p>(2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The contaminated element provides personnel to do this when the crews do not dismount.</b></p> <p>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews.</p> <p>(a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper intervals).</p> <p>(b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up; for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered.</p> <p>(4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle washdown site.</p> <p>(5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination element supervises the operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that vehicle operators—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</li> <li>b. Washed vehicles.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Started at the top and worked down.</li> <li>(2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle.</li> <li>(3) Monitored water consumption.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Moved to the assembly area (AA) after the vehicle wash down.</li> <li>d. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange.</li> </ul> <p>9. The contaminated element conducts MOPP gear exchange.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix).</li> <li>b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed.</li> <li>c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material).</li> <li>d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system.</li> <li>e. Moved soldiers to the AA after completing MOPP gear exchange.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p><b>1. Ensure that the supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding.</b></p> <p><b>2. The supporting decontamination element cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination (using an NEC 4 report) to higher HQ.</b></p> <p>*10. Element leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.</p> <p>*11. The contaminated element leader reports to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the completion and location of the vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites.</li> <li>b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazards were detected.</li> <li>c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).</li> </ul> <p>12. The contaminated element continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 5 (chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route.</li> <li>b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission.</li> <li>c. Obtained a route clearance and approval.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares to cross the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route or had strip maps.</li> <li>c. Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement).</li> <li>d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>e. Attached M9 detector paper to soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible.</li> <li>c. Crossed the area as quickly and carefully as possible.</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit exits the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301)  
 (FM 20-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is tactically deployed in a contemporary operating environment. The enemy has air and ground surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Personnel and camouflage resources are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small arms range. The element location or identity cannot be determined through aerial or ground surveillance. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used concealed routes whenever possible, following and paralleling hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the vehicle track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot.</li> </ul> <p>2. Operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used existing tracks.</li> <li>b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that may have been used as a reference point by the enemy ground or aerial fires.</li> <li>c. Obliterated vehicle tracks where they turned, concealing vehicle positions.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conceals vehicles and equipment.</p> <p><b>Note: The leader is provided intelligence data on enemy reconnaissance capabilities in the area of operations (AO).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows.</li> <li>b. Positioned vehicles and equipment so that their shapes blended with the surroundings.</li> <li>c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shapes or shadows of vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area.</li> <li>e. Replaced cut vegetation when it withered or changed color.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Used nets to create shadows.</li> <li>g. Used Camouflage Screen Systems to enhance natural materials.</li> <li>h. Kept heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) under screening systems, even when using natural concealment.</li> <li>i. Covered shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies.</li> <li>j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted.</li> <li>k. Concealed vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain.</li> <li>l. Disguised vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. Leaders enforce camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the element activities did not change the area appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment.</li> <li>b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night.</li> <li>c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking it with the terrain, defilade positions, or shields.</li> <li>d. Ensured the prompt and completed policing of debris or spoil from the area.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. Leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates.</li> <li>c. Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Direct Survivability Construction (05-2-0510)  
(FM 5-103) (FM 5-71-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is supporting a maneuver brigade that is preparing for defensive operations. Survivability and obstacle plans have been formulated. The battalion commander has task-organized the digging assets that are under the control of the battalion. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The survivability plan is executed and fighting or protective positions are constructed to the standards according to priorities and timelines. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander issues an operation order (OPORD) containing the construction plan. <b>NOTE: The digital units send orders to subordinate units using the Maneuver Control System (MCS) and the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System. The digital units perform collaborative planning and process the orders using embedded digital tools.</b></p> <p>2. The company coordinates with the maneuver commanders and on-site engineer officers in charge (OICs) to determine the physical location of direct- and indirect-fire weapons systems and other brigade assets that require protection.</p> <p>3. The company coordinates for maintenance and refueling support for subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 4. The commander supervises the execution of the construction matrix and adjusts the plan as necessary.</p> <p>5. The company reports the status to the higher headquarters and the maneuver brigade. <b>NOTE: The digital units send reports and update the common operational picture (COP) using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scraper Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams

**TASK:** Control Construction of Survivability Positions (05-2-0518)  
 (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, the company receives an operations order (OPORD) to construct survivability positions in support of the maneuver task force (TF) that is preparing defensive positions. Survivability and obstacle plans have been formulated. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The survivability plan is executed and fighting and protective positions are constructed to standard according to the priorities and timelines. The digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element commander issues an OPORD that contains the survivability plan and timeline. <b>NOTE: The digital units send orders and reports and update positions on the common operational picture (COP) using digital means according to the unit tactical operations center standing operating procedure (TOCSOP).</b>		
* 2. The element commander supervises coordination with the maneuver commanders and on-site engineer officers in charge (OICs) or noncommissioned officers in charge (NCOICs) to determine the physical location of direct- and indirect-fire weapons systems and other TF assets that require protection.		
* 3. The element commander supervises the execution of the survivability matrix, adjusts the plan as necessary, and coordinates any changes with the supported unit commander.		
4. The command post (CP) reports the status of the construction of survivability positions to the engineer battalion and the maneuver TF.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-4009	Determine Logistical Requirements for Nonexplosive Antivehicular Obstacles
052-195-4060	Supervise the Construction of a Defensive Position

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-75) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-90.1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment the unit is conducting a convoy. The operation order (OPORD) and the rules of engagement (ROE) provide guidance for the mission and actions to take upon contact. The enemy squad- to platoon-size force attacks the main body of the convoy. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages from the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage by taking immediate action. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader prepares for combat operations.  <b>NOTE: Digital units set stale settings to provide current friendly and enemy unit locations.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>b. Established radio communications with security elements.</li> <li>c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire).</li> <li>d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the movement, and ensured that the convoy had 360° coverage while moving.</li> <li>e. Designated en route rally points and the actions to be taken at those points.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route.</li> <li>g. Received an update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units receive updated intelligence information through the Force XXI Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or the Maneuver Control System (MCS).</b></p> <p>2. The element prepares for combat operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: Air guards are present.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition.</li> <li>c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP).</li> <li>d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all standing operating procedures (SOPs).</li> </ul> <p>3. The convoy reacts to enemy contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Sought available cover.</li> <li>c. Maneuvered vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy and moved all unarmed vehicles to cover.</li> <li>d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy.</li> <li>e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the element leader.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader develops the situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated fire and maneuver.</li> <li>b. Requested indirect-fire support.</li> <li>c. Sought information on the enemy strength, composition, and disposition.</li> <li>d. Evaluated the direction and volume of the enemy fire, confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader selects a course of action based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy flank.</li> <li>b. Conducted a frontal assault.</li> <li>c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver.</li> </ul> <p>6. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities).</p> <p>* 7. The element leader reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>8. The element reorganizes and resumes its convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconstituted the security force.</li> <li>b. Treated and evacuated casualties.</li> <li>c. Reported casualties.</li> <li>d. Redistributed ammunition and equipment.</li> <li>e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-3-0113)  
 (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a contemporary operating environment. While moving mounted or dismounted, remotely delivered mines impact on or around the element. Personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. Digital units send and receive orders and reports and update the common operational picture (COP) using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The individual who first discovers a mine initiates the alarm according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).  <b>NOTE: Digital units send alert messaging and populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the location and/or send reports using FM or digital means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <p>2. Command post (CP) personnel receive the alarm and alert units.                      a. Notified all elements. If the element was—                      (1) Mounted, it accelerated and moved out of the area. When tactically feasible, the element moved in a column along a hard-surfaced road, watching for mines along the route.                      (2) Dismounted, it moved rapidly out of the area along the best-cleared route, watching for mines and trip wires.                      (3) Dismounted and deployed in a bivouac or assembly area (AA), it departed immediately along a hard-surfaced road (if practical), watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Unable to depart immediately, it remained in covered or protected positions until the minefield was deployed. The element carefully cleared mines from positions through detonation and departed as soon as feasible, following a hard-surfaced road (if practical) and watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines.</p> <p>b. Informed higher headquarters (HQ) and adjacent units of the situation and included a description of the mines and the extent to which they were employed.</p> <p>c. Requested counterbattery fire (if the mines were artillery-delivered).</p> <p>3. Vehicle commanders check the immediate area and element personnel remove any mines and trip wires from vehicles. Element personnel—</p> <p>a. Dismounted and inspected the vehicles for mines and trip wires.</p> <p>b. Removed trip wires from soft-skinned vehicles using a grapnel or a similar device.</p> <p><b>NOTE: When using a grapnel to remove trip wires, throw the grapnel away from the covered position. Sound a warning to others in the area before throwing the grapnel.</b></p> <p>c. Left any vehicles touching or blocked in by antitank (AT) mines until the rest of the unit was out of the minefield.</p> <p>* 4. Element leaders identify unmovable vehicles and designate one or more lanes as exit lanes to allow remaining personnel and vehicles to leave the minefield, normally along previously used access routes.</p> <p>5. Element personnel mark designated lanes and destroy or remove mines within them.</p> <p>a. Used visual means to locate mines and marked the vehicle lanes. The lanes were at least 5 meters wide. The lanes were marked according to the tactical situation and threat; however, marked areas also allowed personnel to reenter the minefield and recover equipment or vehicles.</p> <p>b. Destroyed or removed all mines in the lanes (using a grapnel hook or other means) as directed by the company commander. Detonated only unmovable mines, reducing the likelihood of fragmentation injuries and equipment damage.</p> <p>* 6. Vehicle commanders direct the personnel that are ground-guiding vehicles out of the minefield.</p> <p>a. Ensured that individual elements moved only when directed to do so by the chain of command.</p> <p>b. Ensured that any equipment not in contact with a mine or a trip wire was placed onto vehicles.</p> <p>c. Ensured that individual crews ground-guided vehicles to a designated lane or allowed them to exit the minefield on their own.</p> <p>7. Company personnel remove any equipment or vehicles remaining after the initial extraction from the minefield.</p> <p>a. Reentered the minefield using the same exit routes.</p> <p>b. Detonated the minimum number of mines necessary to remove vehicles or equipment from the minefield.</p> <p>c. Avoided contact with mines and took all possible precautions to ensure that they were not jarred.</p> <p>d. Placed sandbags near mines to minimize vehicle and equipment damage.</p> <p>e. Removed mines from the equipment using a line or other remote means, and ensured that all personnel remained at a safe distance.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
f. Placed explosive charges to minimize vehicle damage when detonating mines on the ground.  8. If the position cannot be evacuated, element personnel clear sufficient mines to allow mission accomplishment. a. Cleared the communication lanes between positions. b. Marked the communication lanes between positions. c. Placed sandbags around mines to prevent injury and damage to the equipment from the detonation.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-2150	Setup an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]), Preoperation
052-192-2151	Operate an M71 Remote Control Unit (for the Hornet)
052-192-2152	Emplace an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Remote Operations
052-192-3201	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Area Distribution
052-192-3202	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) in a Gauntlet
052-192-3203	Direct the Employment of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) with a Conventional Minefield
052-192-4201	Supervise the Placement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) Field
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210)  
 (FM 5-250) (TM 750-244-2) (TM 750-244-3)  
 (TM 750-244-6) (TM 750-244-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, an enemy assault penetrates the position of the element. The element leader is ordered to evacuate the position and disable items of equipment that the platoon cannot haul or move. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element evacuates the position and disables all critical items that cannot be hauled or moved. The digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader prioritizes the equipment to be disabled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used information in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Identified critical equipment as communication assets (radios and keying material), transportation assets (tracked and wheeled vehicles and construction equipment), barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives), and weapons systems.</li> <li>c. Prioritized the disabling of the equipment based on its value to the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader determines the method for disabling tracked and wheeled vehicles, including the construction equipment, and directs unit members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements, such as the gearbox, the starter, the battery, the engine block, the transmission, the instrument panel, and the communications equipment.</li> <li>b. Drained the hydraulic system and cut the hoses.</li> <li>c. Used explosives to disable transportation assets, such as tracked or wheeled vehicles and trailers.</li> <li>d. Used a bayonet or another cutting tool to slash all tires.</li> <li>e. Drained the oil and ran the engine until it seized.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader determines the method for disabling the communications equipment and directs the unit members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements using an ax, a pick, a sledgehammer, or any heavy implement. Smashed all dials, knobs, and gauges and demolished all antennas.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
b. Used explosives to disable the communications equipment. * 4. The element leader determines the amount of barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives) to use, and destroys the remaining items with explosives. * 5. The element leader determines the method for disabling an organic bridge with demolitions. a. Considered whether to use partial or complete destruction. b. Considered the quantity and type of explosive. c. Considered whether to use an electric or nonelectric firing system. d. Considered what the appropriate time would be to disable or demolish the bridge. e. Considered the method of coordination to use with adjacent forces. 6. The element members disable critical equipment during the evacuation according to the plan of the element leader. * 7. The element leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit SOP.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-193-2014	Determine the Safe Distance When Firing Explosives
052-193-2016	Direct Placement of Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-193-3023	Calculate Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3054	Prepare a Demolition Reconnaissance Report
052-193-4040	Manage Engineer Demolition Missions

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Support Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Construct a Protective Obstacle (05-3-0230)  
 (FM 5-102) (FM 3-20.15) (FM 5-100)  
 (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is conducting defensive or assembly area operations in a tactical environment, is stationary, and has identified the need to construct a protective obstacle across or along a probable threat avenue of approach. The company commander has authorized the construction of the obstacle. Sufficient time, manpower, and materials are available. Threat contact is not expected until after the "defend-no later than (NLT)" time specified in the operation order (OPORD) or operation plan (OPLAN). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The obstacle accomplishes the commander's intent by delaying, stopping or channeling the enemy advance on the chosen avenue of approach. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader determines the location for the proposed obstacle.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a reconnaissance to determine the most effective location for the obstacle.</li> <li>b. Based the decision on siting the obstacle on likely threat avenues of approach.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the proposed location could be continuously overwatched by elements of the platoon.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the proposed obstacle site tied into existing obstacles.</li> <li>e. Identified the type of obstacle to accomplish the commander's intent from the category of demolition, constructed, land mines, contamination, or expedient.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader coordinates the obstacle.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the obstacle complemented other defensive measures.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the obstacle did not hamper the platoon or company scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>c. Reported the initiation of obstacle construction.</li> <li>d. Reported the completion of the obstacle.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The platoon emplaces the obstacle.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Emplaced the obstacle to specifications and at the location directed by the element leader.</li> <li>b. Continued work until the obstacle achieved the desired intent against the type of threat expected along the avenue of approach.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The platoon continuously overwatches the obstacle.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Detected and denied opposing forces (OPFOR) attempts to reconnoiter the obstacle.</li> <li>b. Detected OPFOR attempts to breach the obstacle.</li> <li>c. Denied OPFOR breach of obstacle by the use of effective fire.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-2026	Direct a Minefield Marking Party
052-193-2015	Direct Placement of Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-2016	Direct Placement of Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-2017	Direct Placement of Breaching Charges
052-193-2018	Direct Placement of Cratering Charges
052-193-3022	Calculate Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-3023	Calculate Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3024	Calculate Breaching Charges
052-193-3025	Calculate Explosive Requirements for Road Craters
052-195-1004	Install Pickets, Barbed Wire, and Concertina
052-195-2101	Direct Construction of Wire Entanglements

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-0904.05-R01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-90.1) (FM 5-10)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, the element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. Security elements are coordinated. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element establishes local security and tenable defensive positions that provide early warning and protection from an enemy attack. The presence of the enemy is not a surprise. The only time restraints are those specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. Digital units submit reports and locations using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA) to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location.</p> <p>a. Conducted a mission analysis.</p> <p>(1) If a maneuver force was providing security, the element followed procedures beginning with task step 4.</p> <p>(2) If the unit was working alone or was in an isolated area, the element leader designated overwatch and reconnaissance/minesweeping teams and followed procedures beginning with task step 2.</p> <p>b. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher headquarters (HQ).</b></p> <p>c. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</p> <p>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</p> <p>* 2. The element occupies a stationary overwatch position at the site. The overwatch team leader—</p> <p>a. Selected a covered and concealed position.</p> <p>b. Assigned a sector of observation and fire.</p> <p>c. Directed the overwatch team to use all available sights and other visual devices to scan the sector and identify enemy forces.</p> <p>3. The reconnaissance/minesweeping team secures the site.</p> <p>a. Checked for a possible enemy ambush at the site.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Located, marked, and reported any mines or unexploded ordnance (UXO) on the site. The chain of command reported the hazard to explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel for disposal.</p> <p>4. The element moves into and occupies the position after the site is clear.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters tentative fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified avenues of approach.</li> <li>b. Identified observation posts (OP) or patrol routes to secure the perimeter.</li> <li>c. Identified crew-served weapons positions.</li> <li>d. Established withdrawal routes.</li> <li>e. Identified dismounted personnel positions.</li> <li>f. Positioned vehicles in covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>g. Established sectors of fire and general positions for crew-served weapons and vehicles.</li> <li>h. Designated which fighting positions (OPs or patrols) would be manned full time.</li> <li>i. The patrol or OP team moved to an assigned position. The patrol or OP team— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided early warning and close-in security.</li> <li>(2) Offered cover and concealment for occupants.</li> <li>(3) Established a concealed route leading to and away from the OP.</li> <li>(4) Operated according to the unit TACSOP or SOP until relieved.</li> <li>(5) Maintained communications with the command post.</li> </ul> </li> <li>j. Supervised the positioning of the chemical alarm. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Placed the alarm 150 meters upwind from the unit.</li> <li>(2) Ensured that the alarm was within visible site of the elements position to prevent it from being tampered with by the enemy.</li> <li>(3) Did not place the alarm in a depression.</li> <li>(4) Moved the chemical alarm if the wind shifted.</li> </ul> </li> <li>k. Subordinate leaders designated individual positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designated primary fighting positions.</li> <li>(2) Designated alternate fighting positions.</li> <li>(3) Established sectors of fire for each individual and ensured that individual range cards and element sector sketches were complete according to the unit TACSOP or SOP.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The unit TACSOP or SOP should have a set time standard for completing the range cards and sector sketches.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>l. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force and higher HQ.</li> <li>m. Emplaced protective obstacles, if required, based on the five-step risk management process.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The unit should establish alert procedures and rehearse the procedures on site with a 100 percent occupation of the position.</b></p> <p>6. The element begins work.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Kept individual weapons within close reach.</li> <li>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</li> <li>c. Maintained camouflage procedures.</li> <li>d. Maintained the directed MOPP level.</li> <li>e. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force or higher HQ.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units send reports and update the COP using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or FM means according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-0908	Conduct Quarters Party Operations
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-0302)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, the crew must construct its own crew-served weapons fighting position using organic equipment. The element leader has selected and approved the location. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The crew constructs crew-served weapons fighting positions providing coverage for the sector of fire and final protective line (FPL) and protection from direct and indirect fire. The position does not restrict the operational capability of the weapon system. Digital units submit reports of their locations and positions using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The element constructs a machine gun position that has a primary and secondary sector of fire and reports intermediate status and completion to the element leader.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the location of the unit to provide current SA.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed the position so that the gun fires to the front or oblique (firing across the front of the unit) with the oblique being the primary sector of fire.</li> <li>b. Constructed the position in an inverted T shape with a firing platform in each corner.</li> <li>c. Used the tripod on the side with the primary sector of fire and the bipod with the secondary sector of fire.</li> <li>d. Used the earth removed during the construction of the position to provide frontal and flank protection, ensuring that it did not interfere with the sectors of fire.</li> <li>e. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers when they were operating the weapon.</li> <li>f. Shaped the hole so that both the gunner and the assistant gunner could get to the weapon.</li> <li>g. Reduced the height of the weapon by digging the tripod platform down, as much as possible, but kept the weapon traversable across the entire sector of fire.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Refer to the appropriate technical manual (TM) or field manual (FM) to ensure adherence to proper clearances.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. Constructed a one-soldier supplemental fighting position to the flank for the ammunition bearer when there was a three-soldier crew for a machine gun. The crew connected this position to the gun position by digging a crawl trench.</li> <li>i. Constructed the position to armpit depth and sloped the floor outward toward each end of the hole.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>j. Constructed grenade sumps the width of the spade and the depth of one entrenching tool length at both ends of the hole.</p> <p>k. Built the overhead cover 46 centimeters thick over the middle of the position, when possible.</p> <p>l. Improved the position, if time permitted, by adding cover, digging trenches to adjacent positions, and maintaining camouflage.</p> <p>m. Completed the position in 7 man-hours without overhead cover or 12 man-hours with overhead cover.</p> <p>2. The element constructs a machine gun position without a secondary sector of fire and reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader.</p> <p>a. Constructed the position in a V shape with the firing position in the apex of the V.</p> <p>b. Constructed the position following the procedures in subtasks 1d to 1k. Completed it in 6 man-hours without overhead cover or 11 man-hours with overhead cover.</p> <p>3. The element constructs a Javelin position and reports intermediate status and completion to the element leader.</p> <p>a. Used earth removed during the construction of the position for frontal and flank protection. However, left both the muzzle blast and backblast areas clear of obstacles to prevent round deflection, fires, and pressure buildup. Cleared the backblast area of highly combustible material to a distance of 5 meters and was either level or sloping down and away from the position.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Caution should be used in the placement of the Javelin. The four caution areas for the backblast and possibilities for overpressure in the position are some concerns. The primary danger zone extends 25 meters to the rear at a 60-degree angle from the rear of the weapon. Not paying attention to these cautions could cause death or serious injury to personnel in danger areas.</b></p> <p>b. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers if the element built cover on the flanks.</p> <p>c. Constructed the fighting position to armpit depth and sloped the floor down toward each end of the hole.</p> <p>d. Constructed grenade sumps the width of the spade and the depth of one entrenching tool length at both ends of the hole.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the position width was narrow enough so that the rear of the weapon extended over the rear of the hole when the soldier firing the Javelin stood at the front of the position.</p> <p>f. Improved the position, if time permitted, by digging trenches to adjacent positions and maintaining camouflage.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Overhead cover is desired only if it protects the crew when they are not firing the weapon (due to the large backblast).</b></p> <p>g. Completed the position in 6 man-hours.</p> <p>4. Prepared a range card and submitted it to the element leader.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-2000	Direct Construction of Fighting Positions in Field
052-195-3065	Direct Construction of Field Fortifications

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-4-1371	Provide Terrain Analysis Information

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 24-35-1) (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) mission requiring the unit to provide its own security and defense. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements, consisting of as much as a motorized rifle company or airborne equivalent, have been active in friendly rear areas. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element completes all preparations for the defense within the time specified by the OPORD. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The company is not surprised by the OPFOR, suffers no casualties from friendly fire, and repels the OPFOR attacks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The elements execute the following tasks when the company is performing this task: Establish Unit Defense, Defend the Unit Position, Construct a Protective Obstacle, and Conduct Hasty Minefield Operations.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander develops a defensive plan according to the OPORD or the FRAGO.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established sectors or boundaries for the subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Assigned battle positions for the company elements.</li> <li>c. Designated primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</li> <li>d. Designated engagement areas (EAs).</li> <li>e. Developed the fire support (FS) plan, including the target reference points (TRPs) forward, within, and to the rear of the defensive position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander conducts a leader's reconnaissance with key company leaders.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established local security.</li> <li>b. Confirmed or modified his plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Leaders survey the terrain to finalize their defensive plans.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the covered and concealed routes to and between all positions.</li> <li>b. Identified all avenues of approach (AAs).</li> <li>c. Identified dead space.</li> <li>d. Requested indirect FS to cover the dead space and the likely AAs.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units request indirect FS using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or FM means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Identified locations for the company command post (CP), observation posts (OPs), the supply point, and the company casualty collection point.</li> <li>f. Identified potential landing zones (LZs) that the enemy could use for an air assault.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The commander designates unit positions or sectors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concentrated fire on the most dangerous and most likely AAs.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Selected positions with good fields of fire and observation of enemy ground and air forces.</li> <li>c. Provided cover and concealment.</li> <li>d. Permitted adequate lateral and in-depth dispersion.</li> </ul> <p>5. The company establishes unit security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the OPs and the air guards.</li> <li>b. Conducted patrols in areas that could not be observed.</li> <li>c. Emplaced early-warning devices.</li> <li>d. Conducted stand-to procedures according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or order.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. Leaders position key weapons and establish fields of fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented the units to provide all-around security.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the weapons covered the most dangerous AAs, EAs, or selected kill zones based on the defensive technique.</li> <li>c. Effected mutual support between elements.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the antiarmor weapons covered the likely armor AAs.</li> <li>e. Registered indirect fire and final protection fires (FPFs) on the most dangerous dismounted AAs, where possible.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. Leaders check the position for potential problems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Walked the positions and adjusted for fields of fire.</li> <li>b. Walked the terrain in front of the positions to determine if personnel accomplished their assigned tasks.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The leaders coordinate with flank elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy AAs.</li> <li>b. Exchanged information on the OP locations, patrols, unit signals, and passage points.</li> </ul> <p>9. The commander coordinated a withdrawal plan.</p> <p>10. The company establishes communications, if available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used wire as the primary communications, if available.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communication with the OPs, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and FS team.</li> <li>c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications equipment was operational.</li> <li>d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communications.</li> </ul> <p>11. The company emplaces minefields and obstacles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested and received clearance to lay protective minefields.</li> <li>b. Emplaced mines or obstacles according to the company obstacle plan and recorded the minefield on the standard minefield form.</li> <li>c. Covered mines or obstacles by observation and direct and indirect fires.</li> <li>d. Reported the location of mines or obstacles to all elements, and forwarded the standard minefield record to the next higher command as soon as possible.</li> </ul> <p>12. The company defends against an enemy assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Detected and reported enemy contact by the OPs.</li> <li>b. Withdrew the OPs on order or according to the company SOP.</li> <li>c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements closed to within range of each individual or the weapons system.</li> </ul> <p>*13. The commander or forward observer (FO) defends against an enemy assault.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Called for and engaged the attacking force with indirect fire according to the company SOP.</p> <p>b. Requested FPF from the supporting indirect-fire units as the enemy neared the final protective line (FPL).</p> <p>*14. The commander defends against an enemy assault.</p> <p>a. Initiated direct-fire engagement of the attacking force according to the unit SOP.</p> <p>b. Executed the obstacle plan according to the battalion OPORD or FRAGO.</p> <p>c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements closed to within range of additional weapons.</p> <p>15. The company consolidates and reorganizes during lulls in the fighting.</p> <p>a. Executed platoon consolidation and reorganization.</p> <p>b. Treated and evacuated casualties.</p> <p>c. Transmitted the status report, and requested replacement personnel.</p> <p>d. Requested resupply.</p> <p>e. Replaced damaged barriers and obstacles.</p> <p>f. Restored communication.</p> <p>g. Repositioned the OPs that were withdrawn during the engagement.</p> <p>h. Resumed security and patrolling activities.</p> <p>16. The company continues to defend.</p> <p>a. Forced the enemy to withdraw.</p> <p>b. Disengaged by order of higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>c. Ordered the reposition of platoons to alternate or supplementary positions as needed.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0510	Direct Survivability Construction
05-2-0518	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-3-0115.05-R01A	Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-3-0116	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-3-0230	Construct a Protective Obstacle
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-4-0110.05-R01A	Mark a Minefield
05-6-0094	Plan Engineer Survivability Operations
19-1-2001	Coordinate Area Security Operations
19-1-2203	Direct Site Security Operations
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element recognizes the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the UXO by type.</li> <li>b. Identified the UXO by subgroup.</li> <li>c. Observed all safety precautions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evacuated the area as appropriate.</li> <li>b. Determined the appropriate action.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Avoided the UXO hazard.</li> <li>(2) Instituted protective measures.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose leaders to mark the area.</li> <li>b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The element marks the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked all the logical approach routes.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the UXO was visible from all markers.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The element reports the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated the UXO spot report.</li> <li>b. Determined the priority based on the current situation.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.30) (FM 3-19.4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An opposing forces (OPFOR) squad-size patrol attempts reconnaissance or intrusion into the command post (CP) perimeter. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element maintains 24-hour security in its assigned sector and is not surprised by the OPFOR.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prepares a physical security plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled the entry of vehicles into the CP.</li> <li>b. Developed procedures for selecting and manning perimeter positions.</li> <li>c. Developed procedures for detecting and reporting OPFOR intrusion or observation of the CP perimeter.</li> <li>d. Controlled access to the element defensive areas.</li> <li>e. Established communications links between observation posts (OPs) and the reaction force.</li> <li>f. Developed procedures for initial response to ground attacks.</li> </ul> 2. The element operates a guard force. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established communications with the guard commander.</li> <li>b. Stopped unauthorized entry into restricted areas.</li> <li>c. Conducted random exterior patrols to find and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breached the CP perimeter.</li> </ul> 3. The element reacts to an OPFOR ground attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed preplanned positions.</li> <li>b. Denied intrusion into the CP perimeter.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)  
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)  
 (FM 44-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The element weapon control status (WCS) is weapons hold. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, and UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide personnel and equipment to limit vulnerability.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The unit achieves air situational awareness (SA) by monitoring with simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.</li> <li>c. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms.</li> <li>d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to an air attack.</li> <li>e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>f. Manned observation posts (OPs), daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Established a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if the equipment was available and operational.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged vehicles and equipment before moving out.</li> <li>c. Selected a column interval based on instructions, the mission, and the terrain.</li> <li>d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>e. Assigned soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360°.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Identified threat aerial platforms visually. g. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher headquarters (HQ). h. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms.  3. Element personnel use passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing a position. a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order. b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns. c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360°, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement. d. Identified threat aerial platforms visually. e. Reported all aircraft actions to higher HQ. f. Established the vehicle order of precedence.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)  
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)  
 (FM 44-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms. The element is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is weapons tight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Organized the element to defensive positions.</li> <li>c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms.</li> <li>d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, consider the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The element must positively and visually identify aerial platforms before engaging with small arms, unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.</b></p> <p><b>DANGER: MUNITIONS CANNOT DISTINGUISH BETWEEN FRIEND AND FOE. REVIEW ALL AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURES. PERFORM ALL PRECAUTIONARY MEASURES TO ENSURE THAT THE MUNITIONS FIRED DO NOT CAUSE INJURY OR DEATH TO FRIENDLY FORCES OR DAMAGE TO ALLIED EQUIPMENT. EVEN COMPUTERIZED SYSTEMS REQUIRE CLOSE OBSERVATION.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Made the engagement decision.</li> <li>f. Engaged the element in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO																					
<p><b>NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the element position.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement.</li> <li>h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>i. Sent the PIR to higher HQ.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Aim points for propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for helicopters.</li> <li>2. Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals about 91 meters.</li> <li>3. Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.</li> <li>4. Establish preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.</li> <li>5. Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire (a coordinated, high volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through) will achieve the desired results.</li> </ol> <table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th>TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS</th> <th>COURSE</th> <th>AIM POINT</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Overhead</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Hovering</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by the unit commander.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Leaders direct small arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit.</li> <li>c. Moved vehicles to covered and concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion.</li> <li>d. Engaged nonattacking aircraft only as directed.</li> <li>e. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>f. Reported all aerial platform actions to higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Prepared the element to engage on orders of the senior leader.</li> <li>h. Engaged the element (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms.</li> <li>i. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</li> </ul>	TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT	Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body	Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body		
TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT																					
Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					
Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>c. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>d. Ensured that soldiers assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors.</li> <li>e. Reported any aircraft action to higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Reported any casualties to higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Evaluated the situation and moved the element position as directed by the tactical situation or the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader or noncommissioned officers (NCOs) direct small arms air defense measures during the convoy movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road or off the road if possible. Turned to covered and concealed positions, if the terrain permitted.</li> <li>c. Maintained vehicle intervals or increased the interval or dispersion by using evasive driving techniques.</li> <li>d. Ordered the element to dismount and take up firing positions.</li> <li>e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking.</li> <li>f. Identified aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Engaged the element in attacking aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> <li>h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Reported any casualties to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)  
 (AR 385-10) (FM 3-0) (FM 7-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is deployed, performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Leaders and soldiers are aware of potential safety problems when conducting the task. The element trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger element members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for specified and implied missions (tasks).</li> <li>b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process.</li> <li>c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the mission or conditions changed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent, based on the stated training objective.</li> <li>b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents.</li> <li>c. Described the operation in terms of high, medium, or low risk.</li> <li>d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The commander (or leaders) eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk.</li> <li>b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards.</li> <li>c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment.</li> <li>d. Briefed the elements before all operations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The element carries out safety procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received safety briefings before all operations.</li> <li>b. Practiced the safety procedures during all mission rehearsals.</li> <li>c. Made on-spot safety corrections.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p>1. Safety is a part of realism, and realism includes building safety into the training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war (refer to Field Manual [FM] 7-0).</p> <p>2. FM 3-0 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP) (05-1-0606)  
 (FM 4-30.3) (FM 63-1) (FM 63-2)  
 (FM 63-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** During combat operational planning, UMCP locations have been identified. The commander's intent is to have a fix forward concept of maintenance support to maintain the momentum of the battle. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** A UMCP is established and operating. Maintenance support is provided as far forward as possible according to the commander's intent, the unit maintenance standing operating procedure (SOP), and the tactical situation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The battalion maintenance officer or battalion maintenance technician receives the mission in operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) format.</p> <p>a. Reviewed the mission order and considered the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Tactical situation.</li> <li>(2) Time and distance factors.</li> <li>(3) Backup support availability and direct support (DS) maintenance augmentees.</li> <li>(4) Command priorities.</li> <li>(5) Critical equipment and weapons repair availability.</li> <li>(6) Proposed locations of the UMCP.</li> <li>(7) Maintenance time guidelines.</li> <li>(8) Cannibalization and controlled substitution policies.</li> <li>(9) Overall workload and personnel availability.</li> <li>(10) Enemy situation and capabilities.</li> <li>(11) Security and fire support (FS) availability.</li> <li>(12) Petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) assets.</li> <li>(13) Recovery assets.</li> <li>(14) Special tools available.</li> <li>(15) Class IX stockage available.</li> </ul> <p>b. Task organized the maintenance, POL, and Class IX to provide support at the following locations, based on mission requirements, commander's intent and priorities, and assets available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured that company maintenance teams (CMTs)—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Were located with the company trains.</li> <li>(b) Were placed under operational control (OPCON) of the supported unit.</li> <li>(c) Contained quick fix Class IX and recovery support.</li> <li>(d) Provided quick fix or rapid recovery forward on the battlefield.</li> <li>(e) Accomplished repairs taking less than 2 hours.</li> <li>(f) Performed the initial battle damage assessment (BDA) on equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Ensured that a UMCP—</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Was established in or near the combat trains.</li> <li>(b) Was controlled by the battalion maintenance officer (BMO) or battalion maintenance technician (BMT).</li> <li>(c) Was responsible for repairs and maintenance taking 2 to 6 hours.</li> <li>(d) Was supported by the forward support battalion (FSB) maintenance support team (MST).</li> <li>(e) Returned repaired critical equipment back to the unit.</li> <li>(f) Reported status to higher headquarters (HQ) as required in the unit SOP.</li> <li>(g) Evacuated equipment taking more than 6 hours to repair to the proper maintenance location for repair.</li> <li>(3) Ensured that field trains—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Were located in the brigade support area (BSA).</li> <li>(b) Ensured that the battalion maintenance sergeant (BMS) was responsible for unit maintenance activities in or near the field trains.</li> <li>(c) Provided resupply functions to the UMCP and the CMTs.</li> <li>(d) Coordinated with the BSA maintenance collection point (MCP), which was responsible for repairs taking 6 to 24 hours to complete.</li> <li>(e) Accomplished intermediate direct support (IDS) at this location (by the FSB).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

\*\* indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Conduct Administrative Operations (05-2-1007)  
 (FM 12-6) (DA FORM 1155) (DA FORM 1156)  
 (DA FORM 2166-8) (DA FORM 2166-8-1) (DA FORM 67-9)  
 (FM 21-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is operating in a tactical environment with replacement personnel arriving. The company headquarters (HQ) has all assigned personnel; equipment; and required forms, manuals, and standing operating procedures (SOPs). Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company integrates the replacement personnel. The company prepares and submits personnel reports and actions while sustaining operations and providing for the discipline, health, welfare, and morale of all assigned personnel. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander integrates replacement personnel and assigns them to subordinate elements within the company.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented replacement personnel before their assignment.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the unit mission and the current situation.</li> <li>(2) Explained the chain-of-command procedures.</li> <li>(3) Explained the warning system, safety, and security procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Assigned replacement personnel on a priority basis.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Company personnel prepare the personnel daily summary (PDS).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated the subordinate element data.</li> <li>b. Prepared the PDS.</li> <li>c. Submitted the PDS to the battalion personnel and administration center (PAC).</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Company personnel process Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1155 and 1156.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Posted and maintained the unit casualty record.</li> <li>b. Posted and maintained DA Form 1156.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Company leaders in the chain of command review and verify the completed DA Forms 1155, and submit the reports to the battalion PAC.</li> <li>* 5. Company leaders initiate actions to request awards or promotions.</li> <li>* 6. Company leaders coordinate individual requests for administrative actions requiring approval from higher HQ.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adhered to the local battalion PAC policies.</li> <li>b. Relayed all duty statuses and other actions to the battalion PAC for processing.</li> <li>c. Coordinated all finance actions through the battalion PAC and the finance office.</li> <li>d. Approved or disapproved personal administrative actions (pass, leave, and emergency leave).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 7. Company leaders initiate judicial and nonjudicial punishment actions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Drafted a summary of the incident or violation.</li> <li>b. Obtained and assembled investigation reports and witness statements.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the incident or violation to determine the best course of action (COA).</li> <li>d. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 8. Company leaders monitor personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the means were available for obtaining assistance (according to the SOP).</li> <li>b. Coordinated with higher HQ for morale and personnel support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 9. The company commander initiates DA Form 67-9.</li> <li>*10. The platoon leader/sergeant initiates DA Forms 2166-8 and 2166-8-1.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Drafted work sheets for the noncommissioned officer (NCO) checklist/record and the noncommissioned officer evaluation report (NCOER).</li> <li>b. Forwarded the draft work sheets to the battalion PAC.</li> <li>c. Maintained the appropriate privacy measures during all stages of the process.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*11. Company leaders coordinate the medical and dental treatment of all assigned personnel (for nonbattle injuries).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the procedures for medical and dental assistance were coordinated with higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Adhered to the medical or dental evaluation of the medical or dental authority.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*12. Company leaders coordinate for chaplain assistance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the presentation of religious services.</li> <li>b. Advised personnel on how to obtain chaplain assistance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*13. Company leaders coordinate for Red Cross assistance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Advised personnel on how to obtain Red Cross assistance.</li> <li>b. Recommended personnel for Red Cross assistance.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Combat Medic Section

**TASK:** Provide Emergency Treatment (08-2-0313.05-T01A)  
 (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10) (AR 40-66)  
 (FM 4-02.6)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Casualties are being received from supported units. Casualties may, or may not, have received treatment and some patients may require initial resuscitation. Some wounded, diseased, and nonbattle injury (DNBI) cases also have battle fatigue (BF) symptoms. Combat medics have radio contact with physicians and physician assistants (PAs) at the battalion aid station (BAS). Treatment areas are established and adequate staffing and medical supplies are available. Patients are being triaged as they arrive. The higher headquarters (HQ) tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), operation order (OPORD), the unit TACSOP, and the required publications are available. The medical platoon maintains a 48-hour stockage of medical supplies. Normal medical resupply of the platoon is performed by the division medical supply officer (DMSO) through backhaul or in coordination with the movement-control office (MCO). Medical resupply may also be by preconfigured Class VIII (PUSH) packages throughput from the medical logistics (MEDLOG) battalion located in the corps support area. This task is performed in all environmental conditions. Certain tactical conditions reduce the level of combat health support (CHS). The unit may be subject to attack by threat forces, nuclear, biological and chemical (NBC) attack, or radiological fallout. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Combat medics and the treatment squad provide emergency treatment of patients according to established procedures, Field Manual (FM) 4-25.11, and physician or PA guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Combat medics provide initial emergency medical treatment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated casualties to determine their medical condition.</li> <li>b. Triage patients to determine the priority of treatment.</li> <li>c. Provided immediate measures to the BF cases.</li> <li>d. Identified the extent of injuries and treatment by reviewing the field medical card (FMC), if available.</li> <li>e. Maintained airways.</li> <li>f. Maintained cardiopulmonary functions.</li> <li>g. Controlled hemorrhages.</li> <li>h. Immobilized fractures or suspected fractures.</li> <li>i. Treated burns affecting airways.</li> <li>j. Provided relief from severe pain.</li> <li>k. Treated for shock.</li> <li>l. Consulted the BAS for medical guidance using the tactical radio, as needed.</li> <li>m. Initiated the FMC according to Army Regulation (AR) 40-66 and FM 4-25.11, if required.</li> <li>n. Updated the FMC according to AR 40-66 and FM 4-25.11, if required.</li> <li>o. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>p. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Combat medics provide advanced emergency medical treatment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated patients to determine their medical condition.</li> <li>b. Triage patients to determine the priority of treatment.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Consulted the BAS for medical guidance, as needed.</li> <li>d. Managed airways.</li> <li>e. Assembled a laryngoscope.</li> <li>f. Prepared an endotracheal (ET) tube for insertion.</li> <li>g. Established an ET tube airway.</li> <li>h. Cleared upper airway obstructions.</li> <li>i. Treated for shock with hypertonic saline solution, as directed by the physician or PA.</li> <li>j. Immobilized fractures or suspected fractures.</li> <li>k. Managed directed-energy wounds.</li> <li>l. Treated environmental injuries.</li> <li>m. Controlled pain.</li> <li>n. Relieved pain.</li> <li>o. Initiated the FMC according to AR 40-66 and FM 4-25.11, as required.</li> <li>p. Updated the FMC according to AR 40-66 and FM 4-25.11, as required.</li> <li>q. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>r. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. The treatment squad provides advanced-trauma-management (ATM) treatment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated patients to determine their medical condition.</li> <li>b. Triageed patients to determine the priority of treatment.</li> <li>c. Managed airways.</li> <li>d. Performed examinations.</li> <li>e. Treated burns affecting the airway.</li> <li>f. Managed burns.</li> <li>g. Immobilized fractures or suspected fractures.</li> <li>h. Managed shock.</li> <li>i. Managed directed-energy wounds.</li> <li>j. Treated environmental injuries.</li> <li>k. Controlled pain.</li> <li>l. Relieved pain.</li> <li>m. Consulted with the echelon II or III medical treatment facility (MTF), as required.</li> <li>n. Provided treatment as directed by the physician, PA, or the emergency medical team (EMT) noncommissioned officer (NCO) according to FM 4-25.11.</li> <li>o. Initiated the FMC according to AR 40-66 and FM 4-25.11, if required.</li> <li>p. Updated the FMC according to AR 40-66 and FM 4-25.11, if required.</li> <li>q. Treated civilians, refugees, and enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention.</li> <li>r. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>s. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Combat Medic Section

**TASK:** Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-0314.05-T01A)  
 (FM 8-10-6) (FM 4-02.6) (FM 8-285)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit has sustained casualties. Threat force contact has been broken. Soldiers have been wounded and may have chemical contamination or nonbattle injuries. The unit medical personnel are treating the wounded. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The unit and higher headquarters (HQ) tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) and operation orders (OPORDs) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit medical personnel provide treatment for casualties according to Field Manual (FM) 8-285, FM 4-02.6, and the TACSOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and leaders supervise treatment and evacuation of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a treatment plan.</li> <li>b. Monitored treatment for compliance with FM 4-02.6 and ensured that all casualties were treated.</li> <li>c. Directed the employment of unit medical personnel to treat casualties.</li> <li>d. Monitored battlefield stress reduction and stress prevention procedures.</li> <li>e. Reported casualties, as required.</li> <li>f. Coordinated replenishment of Class VIII supplies with the higher HQ logistics element according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>g. Directed distribution of Class VIII supplies and equipment according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>h. Enforced quality check procedures for Class VIII items issued to unit elements.</li> <li>i. Coordinated for evacuation support with the higher HQ operations element.</li> </ul> <p>2. Unit medical personnel survey casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for responsiveness.</li> <li>b. Checked for breathing.</li> <li>c. Checked for bleeding.</li> <li>d. Checked for head injury.</li> <li>e. Checked for shock.</li> <li>f. Checked for fractures, to include cervical spine and back fractures.</li> <li>g. Checked for burns.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit medical personnel administer lifesaving treatment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Wore protective devices (such as surgical mask and gloves).</li> <li>b. Cleared all objects from the throat of the casualty.</li> <li>c. Used the jaw thrust method to open the airway if a cervical spine injury was suspected.</li> <li>d. Performed cardiovascular pulmonary resuscitation (CPR), 1- or 2-rescuer method, according to FM 4-02.6.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. Unit medical personnel control a hemorrhage.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Applied manual direct pressure to the wound.</li> <li>Elevated extremities.</li> <li>Applied pressure dressing to the wound.</li> <li>Applied digital pressure to the pressure points.</li> <li>Applied a tourniquet as a last resort.</li> <li>Initiated intravenous (IV) therapy when indicated.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: Cannot be done in MOPP4.</b></p> <p>5. Unit medical personnel dress the wounds.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Applied occlusive dressings to open chest wounds, if possible.</li> <li>Applied dressings to open abdominal wounds.</li> <li>Applied dressings to open head wounds.</li> <li>Applied dressings to extremity wounds.</li> </ol> <p>6. Unit medical personnel splint suspected fractures.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Used available materials to splint injuries.</li> <li>Splinted fractures in the position found.</li> <li>Restricted the movement of extremities.</li> <li>Checked the circulation for impairment.</li> </ol> <p>7. Unit medical personnel stabilize suspected neck and back fractures.</p> <p><b>NOTE: When a cervical collar or spine board is not available, use field-expedient materials.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Applied a cervical collar.</li> <li>Applied a short spine board for suspected neck fractures.</li> <li>Applied a long spine board for suspected back and neck fractures.</li> </ol> <p>8. Unit medical personnel treat casualties with burns.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Extinguished thermal burn agents.</li> <li>Removed chemical burn agents.</li> <li>Eliminated electrical burn sources.</li> <li>Uncovered the burn unless it was stuck to the clothing or a chemical substance existed.</li> <li>Applied a field dressing.</li> <li>Initiated fluid replacement, as required.</li> <li>Initiated IV therapy, if indicated.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: Cannot be done in MOPP4.</b></p> <p>9. Unit medical personnel treat environmental injuries.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provided medical treatment for heat injuries.</li> <li>Provided medical treatment for cold weather injuries.</li> </ol> <p>10. Unit medical personnel treat chemical casualties.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Took immediate protective steps according to FM 8-285 to protect self and warn others.</li> <li>Protected the casualty from further contamination.</li> <li>Administered the nerve agent antidote according to FM 8-285.</li> <li>Decontaminated the casualty according to FM 8-285, if necessary.</li> </ol> <p>11. Unit medical personnel prevent shock.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Positioned the casualty in the correct antishock position according to FM 4-02.6.</li> <li>Loosened clothing and equipment.</li> <li>Prevented the casualty from chilling or overheating.</li> <li>Calmed the casualty by reassuring him.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
12. Unit medical personnel evacuate casualties to the treatment platoon or the supporting medical treatment facility (MTF). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared casualties for evacuation.</li> <li>b. Identified litter teams.</li> <li>c. Constructed an improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>d. Secured casualties on litters.</li> <li>e. Used appropriate manual carry methods if a litter was not available.</li> <li>f. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)  
 (FM 8-10-6) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (FM 12-6) (FM 3-21.38)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. The unit has no organic medical-treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties are transported as soon as the tactical situation permits according to the TACSOP, the OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Convention, and Field Manual (FM) 8-10-6. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the transport of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified casualty collection points.</li> <li>c. Identified transport requirements.</li> <li>d. Supervised the preparation of casualties for transport.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the transport of casualties from the unit area with the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>f. Coordinated security requirements for the pickup site with subelements and the higher HQ operations element.</li> <li>g. Disseminated transport information to unit personnel.</li> <li>h. Forwarded the casualty feeder report and witness statements to the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 12-6 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. Element personnel prepare casualties for transport.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.05-T01A for detailed treatment procedures.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Collected classified documents, such as signal operation instructions (SOI), standing signal instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists.</li> <li>d. Secured the custody of organizational equipment according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to the unit HQ according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. Element personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and the injury.</li> <li>b. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul> <p>4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the litter teams.</li> <li>b. Constructed an improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>c. Secured the casualty on the litter.</li> <li>d. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul> <p>5. Element personnel transport casualties to a medical-treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded the maximum number of casualties according to FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Secured casualties in the vehicle.</li> <li>c. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The commander and leaders request an aeromedical evacuation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmitted the request according to FM 8-10-6, the OPORD, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Selected the landing site (which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off) according to FMs 8-10-6 and 3-21.38.</li> <li>c. Supervised the removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about before aircraft arrival.</li> <li>d. Supervised the security of the landing site according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the landing zone (LZ) was appropriately marked (light sets, smoke, and so forth) according to the TACSOP, if required.</li> </ul> <p>7. Element personnel assist in loading the ambulance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed the proper carrying and loading techniques according to FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew.</li> <li>c. Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</li> <li>d. Employed safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>8. Element personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP4.</li> <li>b. Marked contaminated casualties according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Notified the supporting MTF that contaminated casualties were en route to their location.</li> <li>d. Transported casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station.</li> <li>e. Protected casualties from further contamination during transport.</li> </ul> <p>9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before transport.</li> <li>c. Transported EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention and the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)  
 (FM 8-51) (FM 22-51)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Combat health support (CHS) operations have commenced. Element personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. The sleep plan and the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) to manage battle fatigue (BF) soldiers have been developed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period, causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that procedures for managing battlefield stress be implemented. Simplified collective-protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

**NOTE:** Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military occupational specialty (MOS) specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander and leaders perform stress prevention actions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>c. Briefed the leaders' intention to all unit personnel.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning the unit missions, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Instituted an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors.</li> <li>g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities.</li> <li>b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required.</li> <li>b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy.</li> <li>d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Leaders implement stress coping and management techniques.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately.</li> <li>b. Assisted soldiers in resolving home front problems.</li> <li>c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders.</li> <li>d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel before deployment.</li> <li>e. Conducted after-action debriefings.</li> <li>f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any traumatic event according to Field Manual (FM) 22-51.</li> <li>g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The commander and leaders implement stress control techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases.</li> <li>b. Assigned soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks.</li> <li>c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers.</li> <li>d. Referred soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical-treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation.</li> <li>e. Reintegrated return-to-duty (RTD) soldiers into their specific element.</li> </ul> <p>6. Element personnel employ stress prevention measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan.</li> <li>c. Identified other soldiers with signs of stress or BF.</li> <li>d. Provided immediate buddy aid support.</li> <li>e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to their immediate supervisor.</li> <li>f. Accepted new unit members immediately.</li> <li>g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places.</li> <li>h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-10) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (AR 40-5) (FM 4-25.12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Health hazards exist that require field sanitation measures. The element is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit field sanitation team (FST). The combat health support (CHS) plan, the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), and the higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The FST performs field sanitation measures according to the TACSOP, Field Manuals (FMs) 21-10 and 4-25.12, and the commander's guidance. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, only minimum-essential field sanitation activities are performed. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander directs field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed field sanitation activities to counter a medical threat.</li> <li>b. Monitored field sanitation activities for compliance with FMs 21-10 and 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Enforced individual field sanitation measures.</li> <li>d. Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that were beyond the expertise of the unit FST according to the TACSOP and the OPORD.</li> <li>e. Corrected field sanitation deficiencies.</li> <li>f. Reported field sanitation deficiencies that could not be corrected by unit personnel to the FST.</li> <li>g. Enforced safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>h. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The FST supervises the unit field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the field sanitation basic load according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12.</li> <li>b. Supervised the distribution of field sanitation basic-load items according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12.</li> <li>c. Tested the unit water supply for the required chlorine residual level according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>d. Inspected water containers and trailers according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Monitored personnel to ensure that they used personal protective measures (skin, clothing, and bed net repellent) against arthropods and rodents according to applicable directives and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>f. Conducted rodent surveys, as required.</li> <li>g. Monitored personnel for the employment of correct hygiene measures.</li> <li>h. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP, as required.</li> <li>i. Inspected latrines and urinals according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>j. Inspected liquid and solid waste-disposal facilities to ensure their compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>k. Inspected hand-washing devices according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>l. Inspected the transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>m. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander.</li> <li>n. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>o. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel employ field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials according to AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Consumed only water designated as potable.</li> <li>d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries.</li> <li>f. Employed personal-hygiene measures.</li> <li>g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bed net repellent.</li> <li>h. Reported field sanitation deficiencies to the FST.</li> <li>i. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>j. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Food Service Section

**TASK:** Provide Food Service Support (10-2-0317.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-23) (FM 10-23-1) (FM 4-25.12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The elements are requesting field feeding. The field kitchen area is set up, and rations and water are picked up. Additional rations are requested. Unit strength reports are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Food and water may be transported to satellite areas. Disposal facilities have been prepared. Nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attacks and intrusions by threat forces can occur during field kitchen operations. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Provide food service support according to the commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The food service sergeant plans food service support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the strengths of all supported units.</li> <li>b. Requested the required amount of subsistence.</li> <li>c. Prepared personnel work schedules.</li> <li>d. Assigned duties to all food service personnel.</li> <li>e. Prepared the production schedule, as required.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the supported units on the distribution of food to remote areas.</li> <li>g. Developed the NBC decontamination procedures for equipment, supplies, and personnel.</li> <li>h. Coordinated food service personnel's defensive duties with the company command post (CP).</li> <li>i. Requested kitchen mess attendant support from the supported units.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The food service sergeant supervises field kitchen operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established operational hours as prescribed by the field-feeding plan and the commander guidance or both.</li> <li>b. Assigned work schedules consistent with personnel availability and meal schedules.</li> <li>c. Monitored equipment operations, maintenance, and safety for compliance with the appropriate technical manuals (TMs) and the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>d. Coordinated additional supply requests with the company's supply facility.</li> <li>e. Forwarded food service personnel and equipment status reports to the company CP.</li> <li>f. Performed periodic inspections of personnel for personal hygiene and equipment for proper operation.</li> <li>g. Monitored the employment of preventive-medicine measures for compliance with field sanitation policies and procedures in the TACSOP.</li> <li>h. Supervised the decontamination of contaminated equipment, supplies, and personnel.</li> <li>i. Checked operations to ensure that safety measures were employed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The food service personnel pick up and store subsistence items.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected vehicles for cleanliness and proper dunnage.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Inspected subsistence items for condition and quantity.</li> <li>c. Prepared shortages, overages, and unsatisfactory subsistence listings.</li> <li>d. Signed the required documentation.</li> <li>e. Transported subsistence items from the Class I point to the unit field location.</li> <li>f. Stored subsistence items according to security measures and appropriate directives.</li> <li>g. Washed, packaged, or canned foods after an NBC attack.</li> </ul> <p>4. The food service personnel prepare meals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the field kitchen equipment using the appropriate equipment manuals for proper operation.</li> <li>b. Employed personal-hygiene measures.</li> <li>c. Performed preliminary food preparation procedures.</li> <li>d. Prepared menu items according to the production schedule, when applicable.</li> <li>e. Employed preventive-medicine measures.</li> <li>f. Prepared food for transport.</li> <li>g. Employed safety measures.</li> <li>h. Checked insulated food containers and beverage dispensers to ensure that they were preheated or prechilled.</li> <li>i. Checked insulated food containers and beverage dispensers to ensure that the food was properly packed for remote feeding.</li> <li>j. Ensured that all items to support remote feeding were assembled and packed.</li> </ul> <p>5. The food service personnel issue Class I supplies to the company representative (first sergeant [1SG] or supply sergeant) in the maneuver battalions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the head count with the 1SG or the supply sergeant.</li> <li>b. Issued the prepared food in insulated food containers.</li> <li>c. Issued beverages in beverage dispensers.</li> <li>d. Issued sanitized serving utensils, plates, cups, flatware, and condiments to support the meal.</li> </ul> <p>6. The food service personnel or unit personnel (depending on the method of feeding) serve the meals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed personal-hygiene measures.</li> <li>b. Set up the serving line as dictated by the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Inspected the mess kits, if used, to ensure that they were sanitized before serving.</li> <li>d. Employed portion control.</li> <li>e. Maintained food at the proper temperatures.</li> <li>f. Replenished food items.</li> <li>g. Opened no more T-ration pans than required during the serving.</li> <li>h. Destroyed the opened food after an NBC attack.</li> <li>i. Employed safety measures.</li> </ul> <p>7. The food service personnel maintain the equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed before-, during-, and after-operation preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the assigned equipment.</li> <li>b. Maintained temperatures of the wash and rinse water on the wash line.</li> <li>c. Cleaned the cooking equipment.</li> <li>d. Sanitized the cooking equipment.</li> <li>e. Stored the clean equipment to allow for air drying.</li> </ul> <p>8. The food service personnel perform waste disposal.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Initiated effective trash management procedures. b. Performed liquid-waste disposal. c. Performed solid-waste disposal. d. Cleaned vehicles thoroughly with the prescribed cleaning agents. e. Sanitized vehicles thoroughly with the prescribed cleaning agents. f. Employed preventive-medicine measures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-64) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has sustained fatalities. The tactical situation permits GRREG operations to be performed. Some remains may be contaminated. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. There are no GRREG personnel available; nonmortuary affairs personnel perform the task. The theater commander has authorized emergency burials.

**NOTE:** Only those tasks deemed mission-essential by the commander are performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element either recovers the killed in action (KIA) and evacuates them to a designated mortuary-affair collection point or performs an emergency burial. Personal possessions are not lost. Locations of the emergency graves are recorded and reported to higher headquarters (HQ). These activities are curtailed in MOPP4. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element commander designates a search-and-recovery team.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a team leader.</li> <li>b. Issued guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The search-and-recovery team leader prepares for the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a map or aerial reconnaissance of the search area.</li> <li>b. Identified additional support requirements.</li> <li>c. Requested additional support requirements from higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Identified the search pattern to be used.</li> <li>e. Coordinated nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) assistance with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Coordinated area security with higher HQ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises the search-and-recovery and the evacuation operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the search-and-recovery team on operational procedures.</li> <li>b. Issued personal effects bags, human remains pouches (if available), and NBC agent tags.</li> <li>c. Assigned the search area.</li> <li>d. Monitored the search-and-recovery team operations for compliance with the TACSOP and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>e. Coordinated evacuation operations with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The search-and-recovery team conducts the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked the area immediately for mines or booby traps.</li> <li>b. Searched the assigned areas for remains and personal effects.</li> <li>c. Marked the terrain location of the remains with pegs.</li> <li>d. Collected all disassociated personal effects.</li> <li>e. Recorded the 8-digit grid coordinates of the recovery site.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The search-and-recovery team recovers remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established tentative identification.</li> <li>b. Attached the NBC tag or a tag marked with a large C to the contaminated and contagious remains.</li> <li>c. Attached personal effects to the remains.</li> <li>d. Shrouded the remains with available materials.</li> <li>e. Prepared a sketch of the recovery site.</li> <li>f. Prepared a map overlay of the recovery site.</li> </ul> <p>6. The search-and-recovery team evacuates remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified that personal effects were attached to the remains.</li> <li>b. Loaded the remains in ground transportation, feet first and in aircraft, headfirst.</li> <li>c. Transported the remains in a covered vehicle or aircraft to a designated mortuary-affair collection point.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the specific burial site.</li> <li>b. Supervised the marking of the grave site.</li> <li>c. Supervised the burying of all recovered remains and their personal effects.</li> </ul> <p>8. The search-and-recovery team performs emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the grave site.</li> <li>b. Placed the remains in the grave.</li> <li>c. Marked all grave sites.</li> <li>d. Buried the United States, allied, and enemy forces remains with their personal effects in separate grave sites.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-27-1) (FM 10-27-2) (FM 10-500-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Since the normal supply support transportation is unavailable, supplies and equipment are requested by airdrop.

**NOTE:** An airdrop of supplies and equipment may be preplanned or immediate. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company derigs and recovers supplies, equipment, and rigging gear. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element requests supplies and equipment by airdrop.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the required supplies and equipment.</li> <li>b. Identified the drop zone (DZ).</li> <li>c. Determined the date and time of the airdrop request.</li> <li>d. Forwarded the request for a preplanned or immediate airdrop to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element commander and the element leaders develop the airdrop supply and equipment receipt plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a recovery officer and a safety officer.</li> <li>b. Verified the delivery time and location with the S4.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the survey of the DZ or area of operations (AO) with the pathfinders, the combat control team (CCT), or the DZ support team (DZST) through the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Prepared the recovery and alternate plans.</li> <li>e. Identified the number of people, equipment, and vehicles required for the recovery of supplies and equipment.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the transportation and materials-handling-equipment (MHE) support with the S4.</li> <li>g. Briefed personnel on the tactical situation and the recovery and alternative plans.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The company receives supplies and equipment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured the DZ or AO.</li> <li>b. Derigged supplies and equipment.</li> <li>c. Recorded shortages.</li> <li>d. Identified the damaged items.</li> <li>e. Evacuated supplies and equipment.</li> <li>f. Retrieved the airdrop rigging equipment.</li> <li>g. Buried or destroyed the airdrop rigging equipment that could not be removed.</li> <li>h. Inspected the DZ to make certain that no serviceable airdrop equipment was left behind.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Forwarded the airdrop equipment to the nearest collection point or other location as directed by the S4. j. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to the S2 or S3 and the S4.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A)  
 (DA PAM 710-2-1) (AR 710-2) (FM 3-4)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element headquarters (HQ) is receiving requests for supplies from subordinate elements. The equipment and supplies are arriving through supply channels, but additional supplies may be required. Extra small arms and ammunition are stored in the supply area. The unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the battalion operation order (OPORD) are available. The supply area has been established and supply support is a continuous task that is performed simultaneously with other support and operational tasks. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The equipment and supplies are distributed without interfering with mission requirements as established by the TACSOP and the OPORD. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, unit supply support is reduced to the minimum-essential actions. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means according to unit TACSOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element commander directs unit supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the supply records and status to ensure compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Directed inventories of supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Inspected unit equipment, weapons, and ammunition storage areas for compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>d. Directed the issue of supplies and equipment according to battalion guidance and the TACSOP or both sustainment controls.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The supply sergeant supervises unit supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the supply status to determine total assets.</li> <li>b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Developed the supply storage plans.</li> <li>d. Monitored supply transactions to ensure compliance with established supply procedures.</li> <li>e. Supervised the control of weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>f. Prepared input to the materiel condition status reports (MCSR).</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Supply personnel request additional supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated requirements with the elements.</li> <li>b. Calculated resupply requirements.</li> <li>c. Recorded requests on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>d. Forwarded resupply requests to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Supply personnel receive supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition.</li> <li>b. Recorded receipt of supplies on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>c. Stored supplies according to storage plans.</li> <li>d. Notified the requesting element of the availability of supplies for issue.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Supply personnel issue supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Processed supply requests according to the appropriate regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Prepared transaction documents according to the appropriate regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Issued supplies as prescribed in the commander's guidance.</li> <li>d. Maintained the prescribed copies of the transactions according to the appropriate regulations and directives.</li> </ul> 6. Supply personnel maintain small arms and ammunition. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition according to the appropriate regulations and command policies.</li> <li>b. Requested ammunition resupply from the S4.</li> <li>c. Performed unit-level maintenance on small arms.</li> <li>d. Forwarded weapons beyond organizational-repair capabilities to the support maintenance elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A)  
 (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element occupies a defensive position and is directed to establish wire communications. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element installs wire, a switchboard (SB), and telephones to establish and maintain communications with subordinate elements no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Designated personnel operate a telephone SB.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the SB22/PT for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12. If the packing list was not available, used the end-item list to check the components.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, a packing box, or a ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, a shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from the elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side with nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment according to the grounding techniques specified in TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>e. Performed the SB preoperation procedures according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>g. Connected local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Designated personnel install the internal wiring and telephones.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the field wire or cable before installation.</li> <li>b. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the platoon leader.</li> <li>c. Secured the field wire at starting points and at changes of direction to reduce strain.</li> <li>d. Used the proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>e. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>f. Enhanced concealment using the terrain and vegetation.</li> <li>g. Ensured that the overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Designated personnel operate the telephone SB.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB22/PT by performing communication checks with all users to ensure that the SB was operational.</li> <li>b. Processed calls.</li> <li>c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the telephone SB according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Designated personnel inform the platoon leader when wire communications are established.  5. Designated personnel perform PMCS on the field wire or cable lines. a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field wire or cable lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Support Platoon Headquarters  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)  
(FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)  
(TM 11-5805-294-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The internal communications network is set up according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain.</li> <li>b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines.</li> <li>d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task.</li> <li>e. Prepared a telephone traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system.</li> <li>f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI) or the standing signal instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone system users.</li> </ul> <p>2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from adverse elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram.</li> <li>g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ul> <p>3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed the distribution box.</li> <li>b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing.</li> <li>c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain.</p> <p>e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</p> <p>f. Tagged the wire ties.</p> <p>g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment.</p> <p>h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</p> <p>i. Finished the line route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction.</p> <p>4. The section operates the telephone SB.</p> <p>a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational.</p> <p>b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties.</p> <p>c. Processed calls.</p> <p>d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required.</p> <p>e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM.</p> <p>5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines.</p> <p>a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field cable or wire lines.</p> <p>b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Report Casualties (12-1-0403.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6) (AR 600-8-1) (DA FORM 1594)  
 (TC 12-17)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers have been wounded, killed, captured, or are missing. Casualty reports are arriving from supported units. The element is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat Service Support Computer System (TACCS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualty information is processed and provided daily to the supporting personnel service company (PSC) and parent brigade. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section collects casualty information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged casualty information on Department of the Army (DA) Form 1594.</li> <li>b. Completed missing information.</li> <li>c. Verified the data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S1 section processes the casualty data.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Posted the battle roster.</li> <li>b. Initiated the casualty feeder report.</li> <li>c. Printed the casualty feeder report.</li> <li>d. Backed up the feeder report file.</li> <li>e. Restored the feeder files.</li> <li>f. Merged the feeder reports for task force (TF) units.</li> <li>g. Prepared the transmittal letters.</li> <li>h. Prepared the letters of condolence and sympathy and forwarded them to the division Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel) (G1) or separate brigade S1.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The personnel staff noncommissioned officer (PSNCO) forwards the casualty data.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed casualty feeder reports for accuracy and completeness with the data entered on DA Form 1594.</li> <li>b. Reconciled the casualty log with the strength accounting data.</li> <li>c. Corrected any deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to the servicing PSC.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The battalion S1 disseminates casualty information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided data to the battalion command group and staff.</li> <li>b. Coordinated religious rites with the chaplain.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
16-1-1001.05-T01A	Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Conduct Replacement Operations (12-1-0405.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6) (DA FORM 3955) (DA FORM 647)  
 (DA PAM 600-8-2) (DA PAM 600-8-23)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Replacements arrive in the battalion area. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The unit is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat Service Support Computer System (TACCS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) processes and transports replacements to their units within 4 hours of their arrival. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) conducts administrative processing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed assignment orders.</li> <li>b. Welcomed soldiers to the unit.</li> <li>c. Assigned soldiers to units according to the commander's priorities.</li> <li>d. Signed soldiers in on Department of the Army (DA) Form 647.</li> <li>e. Collected medical and dental records.</li> <li>f. Turned in medical and dental records to the battalion aid station.</li> <li>g. Added names to the battle roster.</li> <li>h. Prepared Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) input.</li> <li>i. Completed DA Form 3955.</li> <li>j. Forwarded DA Form 3955 to the servicing postal activity.</li> </ul> * 2. The S1 or PAC supervisor processes soldiers into the command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the mission and the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Coordinated mess and medical support.</li> <li>c. Inspected soldiers for combat-critical clothing shortages.</li> <li>d. Coordinated equipment issue.</li> <li>e. Coordinated transportation to subordinate units.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Provide Legal Support (12-1-0410.05-T01A)

(AR 27-10)

(AR 15-6)

(AR 190-47)

(AR 27-1)

(AR 27-20)

(AR 600-20)

(AR 600-8-2)

(AR 600-85)

(AR 635-200)

(DD FORM 457)

(DOD REG 5500.7-R)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is deployed and conducting combat operations. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Requests for legal support have been received. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) provides legal support to the command according to the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ), other laws and directives, the Manual for Courts-Martial (MCM), and the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The battalion legal noncommissioned officer (NCO) or specialist provides the battalion commander with the current status of legal matters, to include—                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Courts-martial actions and dispositions.</li> <li>b. Nonjudicial proceedings.</li> <li>c. Administrative separation actions.</li> <li>d. Formal and informal investigations.</li> <li>e. Other adverse administrative actions, such as bars to reenlistment or letters of reprimand.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The battalion legal NCO or specialist assists subordinate commanders and soldiers.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with subordinate units to assist in the disposition of court and board actions.</li> <li>b. Prepared charge sheets, allied papers, confinement orders, and the commander's actions.</li> <li>c. Recorded and prepared proceedings of Article 32(b) investigations (Department of Defense [DD] Form 457).</li> <li>d. Prepared records of nonjudicial punishment.</li> <li>e. Reviewed records of nonjudicial punishment forwarded by subordinate units.</li> <li>f. Processed appeals of nonjudicial punishment and monitored posting of records to personnel and financial files.</li> <li>g. Prepared notifications of administrative separation.</li> <li>h. Recorded and prepared records of board proceedings related to administrative separations.</li> <li>i. Prepared, processed, and monitored the administrative separation actions.</li> <li>j. Recorded and prepared records of trial for special courts-martial.</li> <li>k. Prepared and processed records of trial for summary courts-martial.</li> <li>l. Prepared, processed, and monitored the suspension of favorable personnel actions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The battalion legal NCO or specialist coordinates with the brigade legal NCO for legal services from the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) or brigade legal advisor.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Acted as a liaison between subordinate units and the SJA section.</li> <li>b. Assisted the legal assistance officer in preparing powers of attorney, wills, and other legal assistance documents.</li> <li>c. Assisted the claims judge advocate with claims investigations and assisted in the preparation of claims forms, to include forwarding them for appropriate disposition.</li> <li>d. Forwarded documents for review by administrative law and contract law personnel.</li> <li>e. Assisted judge advocates with military justice, international law, and operational law training.</li> <li>f. Assisted the trial counsel in preparing pretrial, trial, and posttrial documents.</li> <li>g. Arranged for witnesses and other necessary personnel to be present at the courts-martial.</li> <li>h. Assisted in processing of posttrial prisoners for confinement.</li> </ul> <p>4. The battalion legal NCO or specialist coordinates with the trial defense service for defense counsel services.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Arranged for advice by counsel for nonjudicial punishment proceedings.</li> <li>b. Arranged for consultation with counsel for administrative separations or representation.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The battalion commander administers the UCMJ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of violations of the UCMJ.</li> <li>b. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</li> <li>c. Returned charges to the subordinate commander for other disposition.</li> <li>d. Referred charges to trial by summary court or forwarded charges for trial by courts-martial.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The battalion commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other than judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated, forwarded, approved, or returned letters of reprimand/admonition.</li> <li>b. Approved, disapproved, or forwarded administrative separations.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program (16-1-1001.05-T01A)  
(FM 1-05)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is engaged in combat operations. Casualties have occurred. Requests for religious support have been received. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The command and soldier religious-support needs are promptly met. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit ministry team (UMT) prepares the religious-support plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained the battalion commander's guidance.</li> <li>b. Assessed the religious needs of the command.</li> <li>c. Coordinated for direct religious support (DRS) and general religious support (GRS).</li> <li>d. Provided the coordinating staff with the required input to the plans and the orders.</li> <li>e. Provided the UMT with the input to the religious-support annex of higher-echelon operations and plans.</li> <li>f. Prepared and disseminated the battalion religious-support plan.</li> <li>g. Reviewed the casualty data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The UMT performs or provides religious support, rites, and services.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided worship services; memorial ceremonies to honor the dead; and services for the sacraments, rites, and ordinances.</li> <li>b. Ensured that mass or emergency burials were conducted with reverential handling of the remains, appropriate religious burials, and the proper military honors.</li> <li>c. Provided DRS to battalion headquarters personnel.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The UMT performs pastoral care to the soldiers.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided pastoral care to counter battlefield shock and trauma.</li> <li>b. Conducted pastoral counseling to lessen stress and enhance morale.</li> <li>c. Provided immediate support for battle fatigue.</li> <li>d. Conducted specialized counseling to lessen stress and enhance morale and performance.</li> <li>e. Provided care and counseling functions.</li> <li>f. Conducted pastoral care to casualties during intense battles.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The UMT advises the commander on unit morale, moral climate, and religious welfare.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided direct, personally verified information on the morale and moral climate of the command.</li> <li>b. Briefed the commander on the moral and humanitarian aspects of policies and leadership.</li> <li>c. Informed the commander, personally, on the impact of unit policies; unjust, disruptive, and potentially disruptive social patterns; and any possible violations of the laws of war.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Advised the commander on specific religious requirements of the soldiers and the policies or procedures affecting their right to free exercise of religion.</p> <p>5. The UMT advises the commander on ethical issues.</p> <p>a. Advised the commander on methods of improving the ethical climate within the unit.</p> <p>b. Briefed on the ethical aspects of policies and leadership.</p> <p>c. Briefed the commander on the training of soldiers in ethical and moral decision making.</p> <p>d. Used preaching, pastoral counseling, and ethical or moral instruction, to reaffirm the value of human life, justice, dignity, and truth and to challenge soldiers to serve their country honorably.</p> <p>e. Served as the ethical advocate to the commander in preventing the mistreatment of friendly troops, enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), and civilians; the violation of morality codes; the desecration of sacred places; the disrespect for human life; and illegal acts.</p> <p>6. The UMT advises the commander on indigenous religions.</p> <p>a. Assisted the civil-military operations officer in analyzing religious and cultural factors in basic doctrines, religious structures, and symbols and practices of the principal faith and the significance of sacred shrines, temples, and holy places.</p> <p>b. Advised the command of the indigenous religions of the local population and their impact on the unit mission.</p> <p>c. Assisted the command in developing friendly relations with local religious groups and civilians.</p> <p>d. Met the human-welfare needs produced by combat.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.40) (AR 190-8) (DD FORM 2745)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates the EPWs according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T) method. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element searches the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed weapons and documents that had intelligence value.</li> <li>b. Returned the personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property that was taken.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element segregates the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, desertion status, civilian status, nationality, and ideology.</li> <li>b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element silences the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented the EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented the EPWs from planning an escape.</li> <li>c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The element safeguards the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Treated the EPWs humanely.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Attached Part A to the EPWs. c. Retained Part B for the unit records. d. Attached Part C to the property.  6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear. a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs. b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point. c. Exploited the intelligence information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number		Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures	

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A)  
 (FM 4-30.3) (AR 220-1) (AR 385-40)  
 (AR 700-138) (AR 750-1) (DA PAM 738-750)  
 (FM 9-43-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element maintenance personnel receive requests to repair inoperative organic equipment. The element maintenance area is established. The required tools, equipment, and personnel are available. Operators are performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Element maintenance is a continuous task and is performed simultaneously with other internal support and operational tasks. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element vehicles and equipment are maintained according to the appropriate technical manuals (TMs) and the commander's guidance. Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander directs the element maintenance program.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised the implementation of the unit maintenance program to ensure compliance with the commander's guidance and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified the company operational levels by reviewing the vehicle and equipment status reports.</li> <li>c. Approved the use of controlled exchanges when the required repair parts were not available.</li> <li>d. Approved repairs using the battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR) procedures when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> <li>e. Checked the materiel condition status report (MCSR) for accuracy and completeness.</li> <li>f. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems to minimize their impact on element readiness.</li> <li>g. Coordinated the resolution of maintenance problems with the battalion maintenance officer (BMO).</li> <li>h. Forwarded the MCSR to the BMO.</li> <li>i. Conducted periodic inspections of personnel and equipment to ensure that the safety program was enforced.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Section leaders supervise operator maintenance.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored PMCS performance for compliance with the appropriate TMs and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>b. Inspected personnel and equipment to ensure compliance with the safety program.</li> <li>c. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the motor sergeant.</li> <li>d. Monitored the supply of the repair parts for platoon equipment to ensure that the repair parts were on order.</li> <li>e. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant.</li> <li>f. Maintained the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment.</li> <li>g. Provided input for the MCSR to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>3. Company personnel perform operator maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed PMCS according to the appropriate TMs.</li> <li>b. Notified the supervisor of any maintenance problems beyond the operator's capability.</li> <li>c. Requested approval for the BDAR through the platoon leader when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> <li>d. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual.</li> <li>e. Assisted the unit maintenance personnel with the repairs and services.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The motor sergeant supervises the unit maintenance personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organized the element maintenance personnel to perform element maintenance activities.</li> <li>b. Supervised The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS) and the prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy.</li> <li>c. Supervised the repair and the inspection procedures to ensure that they were done safely and according to the appropriate references.</li> <li>d. Requested approval for the BDAR from the commander when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> <li>e. Supervised the BDAR procedures to ensure that they were done according to the appropriate BDAR manuals.</li> <li>f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges from the commander when the required repair parts were not available.</li> <li>g. Supervised the use of controlled exchanges for compliance with the commander's guidance.</li> <li>h. Notified the platoon or section leaders upon completion of the repairs.</li> <li>i. Supervised the recovery operations to ensure that the correct recovery and safety procedures were used.</li> <li>j. Supervised the Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) procedures to ensure that the testing of oil samples was done at the required intervals.</li> <li>k. Coordinated the maintenance status with the platoon leader.</li> <li>l. Provided the unit maintenance status to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>5. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Diagnosed faults on the inoperative equipment.</li> <li>b. Requested the required repair parts from the PLL clerk.</li> <li>c. Repaired the equipment according to applicable TMs.</li> <li>d. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant when the established repair parts were not available.</li> <li>e. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual.</li> <li>f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges through the motor sergeant when the required repair parts were not available.</li> <li>g. Performed controlled exchanges.</li> <li>h. Performed a final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs.</li> <li>i. Employed safety procedures to minimize accidents.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>6. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the category of the repair as direct support or higher.</li> <li>b. Corrected unit level deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Prepared the required documentation for submission to support maintenance.</li> <li>d. Evacuated the equipment to support maintenance.</li> <li>e. Verified the completion of repairs.</li> <li>f. Picked up the equipment upon the completion of repairs.</li> </ul> <p>7. Unit maintenance personnel perform administrative-support functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the PLL.</li> <li>b. Requested repair parts for element equipment.</li> <li>c. Turned in unserviceable, repairable items.</li> <li>d. Maintained technical publications on all organic equipment.</li> </ul> <p>8. Unit maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the location of the disabled vehicle.</li> <li>b. Identified the best route to the vehicle, given the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Coordinated indirect-fire support along the route with the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) and the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Maintained security while en route to the recovery site.</li> <li>e. Established local security at the recovery site.</li> <li>f. Removed casualties from vehicles.</li> <li>g. Treated casualties.</li> <li>h. Requested medical assistance, if required.</li> <li>i. Evacuated casualties, if required.</li> <li>j. Performed a battle damage assessment to determine if repairs were required.</li> <li>k. Performed repairs and the BDAR on site, if possible.</li> <li>l. Recovered nonrepairable equipment back to the unit maintenance area according to the established recovery procedures.</li> <li>m. Requested the disposition of unrecoverable equipment from the commander.</li> <li>n. Conducted salvage operations to remove all usable equipment.</li> <li>o. Prepared vehicles for destruction according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (05-1-0008)  
 (FM 5-71-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. It receives a new mission that requires the preparation of an OPOrd. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The element is linked to the task force (TF) tactical operations center (TOC). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The OPOrd follows the commander's intent and contains all information necessary to accomplish the mission. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander writes an OPOrd following the five-paragraph format.  <b>NOTE: Digital elements can write the OPOrd and perform planning functions using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the heading contained the task organization.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included all engineer headquarters (HQ) of the elements under the brigade control.</li> <li>(2) Included all engineer HQ of organic elements if the OPOrd was the initial order for the operation.</li> <li>(3) Listed companies and special platoons that were task-organized to HQ other than their parent element.</li> <li>(4) Listed special equipment if it was not clear in the unit task organization.</li> <li>(5) Streamlined command and control (C2).</li> <li>(6) Addressed command support relationships.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Ensured that the situation paragraph contained information about enemy forces (terrain, weather, and enemy situation), friendly forces (higher and adjacent), attachments, and detachments.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the mission was clearly stated, to include who (battalion organization), what, when, where, and why (includes higher mission).</li> <li>d. Ensured that the execution paragraph included the battalion commander's intent with linkage to higher intent, subordinate element tasks and instructions, and coordinating instructions.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the service support paragraph contained combat service support (CSS) instructions and arrangements for supporting units. Used an annex, if lengthy. Otherwise, used the following paragraph 4 sample format:</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>-----</p> <p>4. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <p>a. General concept of logistics support.</p> <p>b. Material and services.</p> <p>    (1) Supply.</p> <p>    (2) Transportation.</p> <p>    (3) Services.</p> <p>c. Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</p> <p>d. Personnel.</p> <p>e. Civil-military cooperation.</p> <p>f. Miscellaneous.</p> <p>-----</p> <p>f. Ensured that the command-and-signal paragraph specified the following:</p> <p>    (1) Command.</p> <p>        (a) Command post (CP) and key leader locations during the operation and planned movements.</p> <p>        (b) Locations and planned movements of higher C2.</p> <p>        (c) The logistical chain of command.</p> <p>    (2) Signal.</p> <p>        (a) The communication/signal differences not covered in the standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>        (b) The critical reporting requirements not covered in the SOP.</p> <p>        (c) The designated nets for mission and routine reports.</p> <p>* 2. The commander ensures that the necessary information is included and briefed to subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 3. The commander ensures that the order is disseminated/briefed in time to satisfy the one-third/two-thirds rule (allowing subordinates two-thirds of the available time).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning
071-326-5626	Prepare an Oral Operation Order

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)
05-1-0412	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)
05-2-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex
05-2-0413	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-3-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Platoon)
05-3-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721)  
(FM 5-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been tasked with a mission that requires additional resources and augmentation support. Augmentation support is available. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion staff determines the augmentation support necessary to accomplish the mission and submits a request and then begins the coordination for logistical support that provides for unhindered mission execution by the attached element. Digital elements perform collaborative planning; send requests, reports, and orders; and perform Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) functions, using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: Digital elements perform collaborative planning, make requests, and send or receive reports using digital systems.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The battalion staff performs mission analysis and determines resource requirements and availability during the estimate process.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined resources required in time to accomplish the mission.</li> <li>b. Determined the availability of organic resources.</li> <li>c. Included requirements for rations, maintenance, fuel, and lubricants to support augmentation element(s), to include shortfalls, such as equipment maintenance.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) submits a request for augmentation support.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested augmentation support from higher headquarters (HQ) if not supporting a maneuver element.</li> <li>b. Requested augmentation support from higher HQ and the maneuver commander when supporting a maneuver unit.</li> <li>c. Submitted the request immediately after the estimate process was complete.</li> <li>d. Included the following information in the request:                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Type of relationship (command or support).</li> <li>(2) Amount and type of personnel and equipment needed.</li> <li>(3) Length of time needed to accomplish the mission.</li> <li>(4) Mission of the battalion.</li> <li>(5) Mission of the augmentation support element.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The battalion staff modifies the estimate process based on the actual augmentation support received.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prioritized the effort for the supporting element.</li> <li>b. Effected the coordination for logistical support based on the command or support relationship, such as food, fuel, and maintenance.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The S3 coordinates the liaison of the augmentation element with the engineer company(s).</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Determined the time, place, and attendance requirements for issuing the battalion operation order (OPORD) if not already issued. b. Determined the time and place for the liaison between the augmentation element and the engineer company.  5. The battalion staff monitors the attached elements. a. Received personnel strength, maintenance status, mission status, and updates as required. b. Shifted assets as necessary. c. Inspected the quality of workmanship. d. Visited the element to maintain high morale.  6. The augmented unit staff terminates augmentation support. a. Accounted for equipment and personnel. b. Reported mission accomplishment to higher and receiving HQ. <b>Note: Reports are sent via FM or digital means according to the standing operating procedure (SOP) of the element.</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
Support Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company) (05-2-0002)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-102) (FM 5-103)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The element is either working directly for an engineer unit from which it has received an operation order (OPORD), or supporting a maneuver force that has received a mission from its higher headquarters (HQ). The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer estimate gives the element leader feasible courses of action (COAs) consistent with the supported commander's scheme of maneuver. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Reports are followed up with pertinent Department of the Army (DA) forms. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader performs a mission analysis.  <b>NOTE: The digital units perform collaborative planning using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS). Available products include the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS), the All-Source Analysis System (ASAS), and the Integrated Meteorological System (IMETS).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the intent of the immediate commander and the commander who is two levels up.</li> <li>b. Identified the area of operation (AO).</li> <li>c. Identified the tasks to be performed, including those specified (directed) in the commander's verbal guidance or in the OPORD, and those implied by the nature of the operation. Decided which tasks were essential to the success of the mission.</li> <li>d. Identified the constraints or acts requiring completion.</li> <li>e. Identified the restraints or prohibited acts.</li> <li>f. Restated the unit mission in terms of who, what (including all essential tasks), when, where, and why.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader performs a situation analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the composition of supported operations and forces, the nature of the operations, any unusual requirements, and other factors affecting the size and scope of the support mission.</li> <li>b. Identified the impact of—                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Precipitation and temperature on the following:                                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Trafficability of enemy and friendly combat vehicles.</li> <li>(b) Water obstacle depth, the water flow rate, and the bank conditions.</li> <li>(c) Ability of the forces to dig positions and tank ditches.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Fog or limited visibility on the positioning of obstacles.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Limited visibility and reduced trafficability of engineer vehicle capabilities to maneuver and keep pace with the maneuver unit fighting vehicles.</p> <p>(4) Extreme weather conditions on the employment of conventional and scatterable mines (SCATMINES).</p> <p>c. Analyzed the terrain for—</p> <p>(1) Observation or fields of fire. Analyzed the impact of observation or fields of fire on obstacle placement (both friendly and enemy). Determined what items, buildings, or vegetation that needed to be cleared to improve observation.</p> <p>(2) Cover and concealment. Identified concealed locations for engineer equipment and materials, especially during breaching and river crossing operations. Identified possible combat trails offering cover and concealment from enemy ground, air, and satellite surveillance.</p> <p>(3) Obstacles. Identified existing, natural, and man-made obstacles and their impact on maneuver, avenues of approach (AA), and the placement of reinforcing obstacles. Evaluated obstacles with respect to friendly and enemy maneuver and the type of unit.</p> <p>(4) Key or decisive terrain. Determined potential engineer tasks required to facilitate friendly control or deny enemy control.</p> <p>(5) Avenues of approach. Identified friendly and enemy mobility corridors and AA based on the unit. Evaluated engineer actions to enhance or hinder movement on these AAs.</p> <p>d. Identified other characteristics important to the engineer plan.</p> <p>e. Coordinated with the supported unit Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) to develop the enemy situation by providing input about the enemy engineer capability.</p> <p>(1) Estimated the strength of the enemy engineer units, including any information (confirmed, suspected, or based on doctrinal techniques) concerning reinforcement to organic enemy engineers from higher enemy echelons.</p> <p>(2) Determined the location of the enemy engineer units and other units having engineer-related capability, including helicopters and artillery units with remotely-delivered mine capability.</p> <p>(3) Assessed the enemy capabilities for breaching, gap crossing, obstacle emplacement, survivability, and emplacement of remotely-delivered mines from aircraft or artillery.</p> <p>(4) Evaluated current significant activities, including engineer battlefield tactics and techniques, to identify weaknesses and strengths.</p> <p>(5) Predicted the possible and most likely COA by the enemy and the impact of the enemy engineer situation on these COAs.</p> <p>(6) Created templates of the location of enemy obstacles, to include SCATMINES, based on available intelligence and doctrinal templates.</p> <p>(7) Created templates of the location of the enemy engineer assets within the enemy formation for offensive operations.</p> <p>f. Evaluated his own situation.</p> <p>(1) Identified the present disposition of major tactical elements, possible COAs, and current and projected operations.</p> <p>(2) Identified the disposition of logistics units and facilities supporting engineer operations, levels of engineer Class IV and Class V items, and the availability of transportation assets.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Identified the present disposition and capabilities of the elements, and estimated the completion times of the current tasks and the combat-support units required to assist with engineer tasks (especially SCATMINES).</p> <p>* 3. The element leader develops at least two separate COAs to accomplish the mission, or develops an engineer plan as part of each COA under development by the maneuver force.</p> <p>a. Identified all tasks and the necessary resources to accomplish them for each location or each supported unit. Calculated countermobility capabilities based on the element, the time available, and the unit planning factors (used planning factors in current field manual if unit planning factors were unknown). Included the use of scatterable-mine-laying systems in capability calculations.</p> <p>(1) Computed blade hours using known data. Used planning factors in current field manuals.</p> <p>(2) Computed the element hours.</p> <p>(3) Identified any unique or special equipment requirements.</p> <p>(4) Identified supply requirements by class of supply and specific items.</p> <p>b. Determined task priorities based on guidance received from the higher commander.</p> <p>c. Allocated engineer forces to—</p> <p>(1) Meet the guidance of the higher commander.</p> <p>(2) Accomplish all tasks.</p> <p>(3) Employ assets efficiently with no wasted squad or equipment time.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader analyzes each COA.</p> <p>a. War-gamed the engineer plan for each COA against the anticipated enemy actions and reactions. Evaluated the plan against impacting significant factors.</p> <p>b. Determined shortfalls by comparing resource requirements with available assets.</p> <p>c. Reduced shortfalls by establishing priorities, sequencing activities, selecting alternate methods, and altering the engineer plan as necessary, until the requirement was within plus or minus 10 percent of the available resources.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If the engineer plan cannot meet the minimum critical maneuver requirements, then it is not feasible and the plan is invalid. The commander must recognize this and formulate a new plan, starting with subtask 3.</b></p> <p>* 5. The element leader compares each COA and selects the best one to accomplish the mission.</p> <p>a. Determined the selection technique to use in the comparison.</p> <p>b. Used the significant factors identified in subtask 3a.</p> <p>c. Selected the best COA based on the subjective judgment along with the numerical techniques.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The commander may use numerical factors in his selection technique; however, the final decision is not based solely on simple mathematics.</b></p> <p>* 6. The element leader states his decision to his subordinates.</p> <p>a. Determined the company task organization and allocated resources.</p> <p>b. Summarized resource requirements by element hours, equipment, and logistics for each location or each supported unit.</p> <p>c. Assigned each task to a subordinate element.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader recommends a COA to the supported maneuver commander.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
a. Identified a COA that could be best supported from the engineer perspective. b. Identified major deficiencies that the maneuver commander must remedy, including recommendations for eliminating or reducing the deficiencies. c. Recommended the command or support relationships and task organization as necessary, tasks to be directed to subordinate elements, and priorities for engineer support.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-0402	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan
05-1-0412	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-2-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
05-2-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Company)
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans
05-2-0403	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-2-0408	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance
05-2-0410	Manage Engineer Reconnaissance Operations
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0404	Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-0405	Perform a Target Reconnaissance
05-3-0407	Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance
05-3-0411.05-R01A	Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
05-3-0413	Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance
19-1-1102	Coordinate Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008)  
 (FM 5-71-2) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is performing tactical operations in a contemporary operating environment. The company receives a new mission that requires the preparation of an OPOORD. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The unit is linked to the task force (TF) tactical operations center (TOC). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The OPOORD follows the intent of the commander, is understandable, and contains all of the information necessary to accomplish the mission. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader writes an OPOORD following the five-paragraph format.  <b>NOTE: Digital units write and disseminate the OPOORD using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), perform collaborative planning, and submit orders/requests and reports according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the situation paragraph contained information about the enemy forces, friendly forces, attachments, and detachments.</li> <li>b. Stated the mission clearly. Included who, what, when, where, and why.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the execution paragraph included the intent of the commander, the subordinate unit instructions, and coordinating instructions.  <b>NOTE: Address any environmental considerations in the coordinating instructions. Include specific measures to minimize environmental damage.</b></li> <li>d. Ensured that the service support paragraph contained combat service support (CSS) and unit support instructions. If the paragraph was too long, used an annex. Otherwise, used the following paragraph sample format:                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Material and services.</li> <li>(2) Medical.</li> <li>(3) Personnel.</li> <li>(4) Civil military.</li> <li>(5) As necessary.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Ensured that the command and signal paragraphs specified the command post (CP) locations for supporting the units and gave the instructions for coordinating and establishing communications by different means (digital and FM).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader ensures that the necessary information is included and briefed to the subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader ensures that the order is disseminated or briefed in time to satisfy the one-third/two-third rule (allowing subordinates two-thirds of the available time).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1389	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-1-1393	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-4-1372	Disseminate Terrain Information Product
05-4-1376	Perform a Geospatial Collection Effort
05-6-0088	Coordinate Geospatial Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Recovery Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System/Prescribed Load List Section

**TASK:** Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 101-5) (FM 3-90.1)  
 (FM 5-422) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, the element receives a mission from a warning order (WO), a fragmentary order (FRAGO), or an operation order (OPORD) to perform operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit leader gives a WO, conducts a leader's reconnaissance, issues an OPORD, and supervises the preparation for the assigned mission within the allotted time. Digital units have the ability to perform a map reconnaissance using the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS). The Army Battle Command System (ABCS) can be used to submit reports and orders to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives the mission in a WO, a FRAGO, or an OPORD from its higher headquarters (HQ). He determines the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC); the needed supplies and equipment; and special tasks to assign.  <b>NOTE: Digital units send and receive orders using the ABCS or FM means according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <p>* 2. The element leader issues a WO to subordinate leaders.                      a. Stated the mission (nature of the operation).                      b. Identified the task organization.                      c. Stated the time of the operation.                      d. Provided any special instructions, such as drills to be rehearsed, precombat checks (PCCs), and precombat inspections (PCIs).                      e. Stated the element timeline.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader develops a tentative plan while the element prepares for the mission.                      a. Developed the plan based on METT-TC factors.                      b. Planned the available time using the reverse-planning process.                      c. Used no more than one-third of the available time, leaving the remainder for subordinate element preparation.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Ensured that subordinate leaders began the PCCs and reconfigured the equipment based on the mission, to include checking rations, water, weapons, ammunition, individual uniforms and equipment, mission-essential equipment, and the individual soldier's knowledge of the mission.</p> <p>4. The element continues assembly area activities and security.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained equipment and weapons.</li> <li>b. Performed personal hygiene.</li> <li>c. Resupplied equipment and materiel, to include small arms ammunition, demolitions, mines, and refueling of vehicles.</li> <li>d. Rehearsed battle and crew drills.</li> <li>e. Performed weapon test firing.</li> <li>f. Ate.</li> <li>g. Rested.</li> <li>h. Maintained security.</li> </ol> <p>* 5. The element leader initiates movement before completing the plan.  <b>NOTE: Subordinate leaders move the element in the absence of the element leader. This task step may be omitted, occur in a different sequence, or be done concurrently with another task step.</b></p> <p>* 6. The element leader performs a reconnaissance.  <b>NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and DTSS products from higher HQ.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a map reconnaissance, as a minimum, along with subordinate leaders when practical.</li> <li>b. Performed a ground reconnaissance (usually as part of a larger force). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included as many subordinate leaders as practical.</li> <li>(2) Identified the critical areas of the mission.</li> <li>(3) Moved as far forward as the time and situation permitted.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>* 7. The element leader completes the plan.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the map or ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Made changes to the tentative plan based on available equipment, personnel, and material.</li> <li>c. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the intelligence gained by reconnaissance assets.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The element leader verbally issues the completed order, in a FRAGO or OPORD format, to subordinate and attached leaders. The order contained the following information and could be given to the entire element at the same time.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. SITUATION. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy forces.</li> <li>(2) Friendly forces.</li> <li>(3) Attachments and detachments.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. MISSION.</li> <li>c. EXECUTION. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Concept of the operation. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(b) Fires.</li> <li>(c) Reconnaissance and surveillance.</li> <li>(d) Intelligence.</li> <li>(e) Engineer support.</li> <li>(f) Air defense.</li> <li>(g) Information operations.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Subunit tasks.</p> <p>(3) Coordinating instructions. At a minimum, the element leader must address the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Time or condition when the plan or order becomes effective.</li> <li>(b) Commander's critical-information requirements (CCIR).</li> <li>(c) Risk reduction control measures.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The element leader determines the risk reduction control measures by using the five steps of the risk management process, referring to Field Manual (FM) 101-5 for additional information.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(d) Rules of engagement.</li> <li>(e) Environmental considerations.</li> <li>(f) Force protection.</li> </ul> <p>d. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Support concept.</li> <li>(2) Materials and services.</li> <li>(3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</li> <li>(4) Personnel.</li> <li>(5) Civil military.</li> </ul> <p>e. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) The location of the element leadership, support element leadership, and command posts for the operation.</li> <li>(b) Succession of command. (If not stated in the element SOP or tactical standing operating procedure [TACSOP]).</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Signal operation instructions (SOI) in effect.</li> <li>(b) Radio communication restrictions.</li> <li>(c) Visual and pyrotechnic signals.</li> <li>(d) Code words and reports specific to the operation.</li> <li>(e) Communications security (COMSEC) guidelines and procedures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 9. Subordinate leaders complete the PCCs, and element leaders perform the PCIs.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Subordinate leaders can perform the PCCs on receipt of a WO or FRAGO. The element should have mission-specific PCC/PCI checklists in the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked and inventoried equipment, ensured that the items were serviceable and that the element had the items specified in the unit SOP and the items required for specific mission.</li> <li>b. Ensured that adequate resupply of ammunition, food, water, repair parts, fuel, medical supplies, obstacle material, demolitions, and mines were available.</li> <li>c. Performed a communications check.</li> <li>d. Ensured that personnel, equipment, and carriers were camouflaged and that weapons were test fired.</li> <li>e. Ensured that personnel understood their task and purpose and that of the element headquarters.</li> <li>f. Inspected personnel, vehicles, weapons, and equipment just before starting the mission.</li> </ul> <p>*10. Leaders perform at least one type of rehearsal.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section

**TASK:** Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI), the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards exist, such as nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional-finding ability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Radio operators install a radio set for operation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured radios in the mount.</li> <li>b. Connected audio accessories.</li> <li>c. Installed antennas.</li> <li>d. Performed before-operation, preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>e. Performed radio operational checks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Radio operators make initial entry into the nets.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI or SSI.</li> <li>b. Entered a radio net.</li> <li>c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognized jamming or interference.</li> <li>b. Determined if the interference was internal or external.</li> <li>c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued to operate.</li> <li>b. Increased the transmit power.</li> <li>c. Tuned the receiver for max signal.</li> <li>d. Relocated the antenna.</li> <li>e. Requested a change of frequency.</li> <li>f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor.</li> <li>g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security [TSEC]/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15. c. Operated only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI/SSI. d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI/SSI (not necessary in secure voice operation). e. Ensured that the length was not more than 20 seconds per transmission and that the number of transmissions was at a minimum. f. Operated on the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations. g. Employed the correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. i. Complied with net discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 3-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is engaging in combat operations and has received a mission from higher headquarters (HQ). The digital elements have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The battalion commander has issued planning guidance. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel estimate and annex of the OPORD are completed in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section prepares the personnel estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained the commander's restated mission.</li> <li>b. Obtained intelligence information from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> <li>c. Obtained tactical information from the commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Obtained logistical information from the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> <li>e. Prepared the troop preparedness situation.</li> <li>f. Analyzed and compared courses of action.</li> <li>g. Developed conclusions.</li> <li>h. Presented conclusions to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>2. The S1 section participates in the preparation process for the service support annex.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the battalion task organization.</li> <li>b. Updated task force (TF) battle rosters and personnel strength (PS) charts to reflect the new task organization.</li> <li>c. Advised the commander and staff on TF PS.</li> <li>d. Developed estimates of injured, sick, and wounded rates.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the location of medical-support facilities and evacuation routes and procedures.</li> <li>f. Provided medical-support information to staff members in support of staff planning.</li> <li>g. Relayed tactical and operational information and command directives to medical-support units.</li> <li>h. Verified casualty data and strength information with the battalion aid station.</li> <li>i. Established requirements and procedures for strength accounting, replacements, and casualty reporting.</li> <li>j. Coordinated and designated temporary enemy prisoner of war (EPW) and civilian detainee collection points and outlined evacuation procedures.</li> <li>k. Prepared the personnel portion of paragraph 4 (service support) of the OPORD.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
I. Briefed the task organization and personnel portions of the OPORD.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6) (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has resumed combat operations. Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. During operations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level I threat; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Casualty processing and replacement actions continue during lulls in combat operations. The task may occur in a field environment or during military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT). A tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel situation report (SITREP), which accounts for all company personnel, is reported daily or as required. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when performing it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The headquarters (HQ) element collects strength information reports from subordinate sections.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged the SITREP and other personnel information.</li> <li>b. Verified strength data.</li> <li>c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The HQ element processes information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated the personnel information of subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Determined critical shortages and cross-leveling requirements.</li> <li>c. Updated the battle roster.</li> <li>d. Prepared a hasty personnel status report (PSR) and strength reports.</li> <li>e. Submitted PSR to higher HQ according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The HQ element processes replacements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed replacements on the mission, tactical situation, company policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or company orientation.</li> <li>b. Added soldiers' names to the battle roster.</li> <li>c. Inspected critical clothing and equipment for shortages.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the issue of needed items.</li> <li>e. Arranged the movement of replacements to the platoon of assignment.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The first sergeant (1SG) disseminates strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the commander on unit strength and replacement status.</li> <li>b. Forwarded the personnel SITREP or hasty strength reports, casualty feeder reports, and witness statements to the supporting Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section.</li> <li>c. Informed subordinate sections of projected replacements.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The company commander performs strength management functions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed cross leveling.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Verified combat critical personnel requirements. c. Reviewed strength management reports. d. Spot-checked strength information processing. e. Briefed superiors on unit strength and replacement status.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A)  
 (FM 22-51) (AR 27-1) (AR 600-15)  
 (AR 608-99) (FM 21-20) (FM 6-22.5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is preparing to resume combat operations. During preparations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level 1 threat; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Preparations occur during lulls in combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The task may occur in a field environment or during military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT). The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company follows and applies techniques to counter performance degradation and to enhance combat effectiveness. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to maintain and inform subordinate units of the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander executes actions to keep soldiers informed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations.</li> <li>c. Instructed the soldiers of the leaders' intentions.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning unit mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Reduced and prevented rumors.</li> <li>g. Disseminated command information to include the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander or first sergeant (1SG) implements the unit sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the unit sleep plan.</li> <li>b. Provided safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep.</li> <li>c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest where possible.</li> <li>d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest.</li> <li>e. Adjusted the plan to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. All leaders implement task rotation restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cross-trained soldiers on critical tasks.</li> <li>b. Developed plans for the rotation of soldiers between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy, such as mathematical computations (duplicate efforts).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. All leaders implement stress-coping and stress management techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Taught soldiers relaxation techniques before deployment.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that the unit implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among soldiers and leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that soldiers used relaxation techniques when needed.</li> <li>d. Facilitated the acceptance of newly arrived soldiers into the unit.</li> <li>e. Reintegrated returned-to-duty, stressed, or battle-fatigued soldiers into the unit.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The company commander or 1SG implements stress treatment techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a plan to deal with mild and more serious stress or battle fatigue cases.</li> <li>b. Assigned soldiers, who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue, to perform simpler tasks.</li> <li>c. Ensured that soldiers were supportive in speech and behavior toward soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue.</li> <li>d. Moved stressed or battle-fatigued soldiers who did not show improvement after resting to unit trains, supporting units, or medical facilities.</li> <li>e. Referred soldiers who had serious signs of stress or battle fatigue and those who were not recuperating for medical care.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The company command group provides morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented sports programs as the situation allowed.</li> <li>b. Provided hot rations.</li> <li>c. Coordinated postal support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated combat payments.</li> <li>e. Coordinated clothing exchange and bath support.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the issue and sale of soldier comfort, morale, and welfare items.</li> <li>g. Coordinated legal support.</li> <li>h. Advised higher headquarters on the unit MWR status.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. All leaders maintain soldiers' fitness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored soldiers' fitness.</li> <li>b. Conducted physical training (as the time and combat situation allowed).</li> <li>c. Implemented personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Corrected problem areas.</li> <li>e. Briefed the commander on the soldiers' fitness status.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The company commander administers the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of reported violations of the UCMJ.</li> <li>b. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</li> <li>c. Forwarded charges for trial by court-martial.</li> </ul> <p>* 9. The company commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other-than-judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Counseled soldiers for indebtedness.</li> <li>b. Counseled soldiers for nonsupport of dependents.</li> <li>c. Initiated letters of reprimand or admonition.</li> <li>d. Initiated administrative separations.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

## CHAPTER 6

### External Evaluation

6-1. General. An external evaluation is used to assess the ability of the unit to perform its mission. Units may modify this evaluation based on the METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected T&EOs from Chapter 5 that involve the total unit and employ a realistic OPFOR and the MILES are used for the evaluation. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander can identify the unit strengths and weaknesses. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit capabilities. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the mission and the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. Procedures for developing the evaluation are discussed below.

**Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario**

Event	Action	Proposed Time Frame	Estimated Time Allotted
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Before start time	
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
3	Issue a Road March Order	Day 1 - 0200 hours	2 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	0400 hours	5 hours
5	Occupy an AA	0900 hours	3 hours
<b>Module 1</b>			
6	Receive a WO	1200 hours	2 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)		
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations		
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
10	Conduct Administrative Operations		
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations		
<b>Module 2</b>			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations	Day 2 - 1400 hours	
13	Receive a WO		
14	Support Combat Operations (Countermobility)		
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
16	Move to an AAR Site and Conduct an AAR		
17	ENDEX		

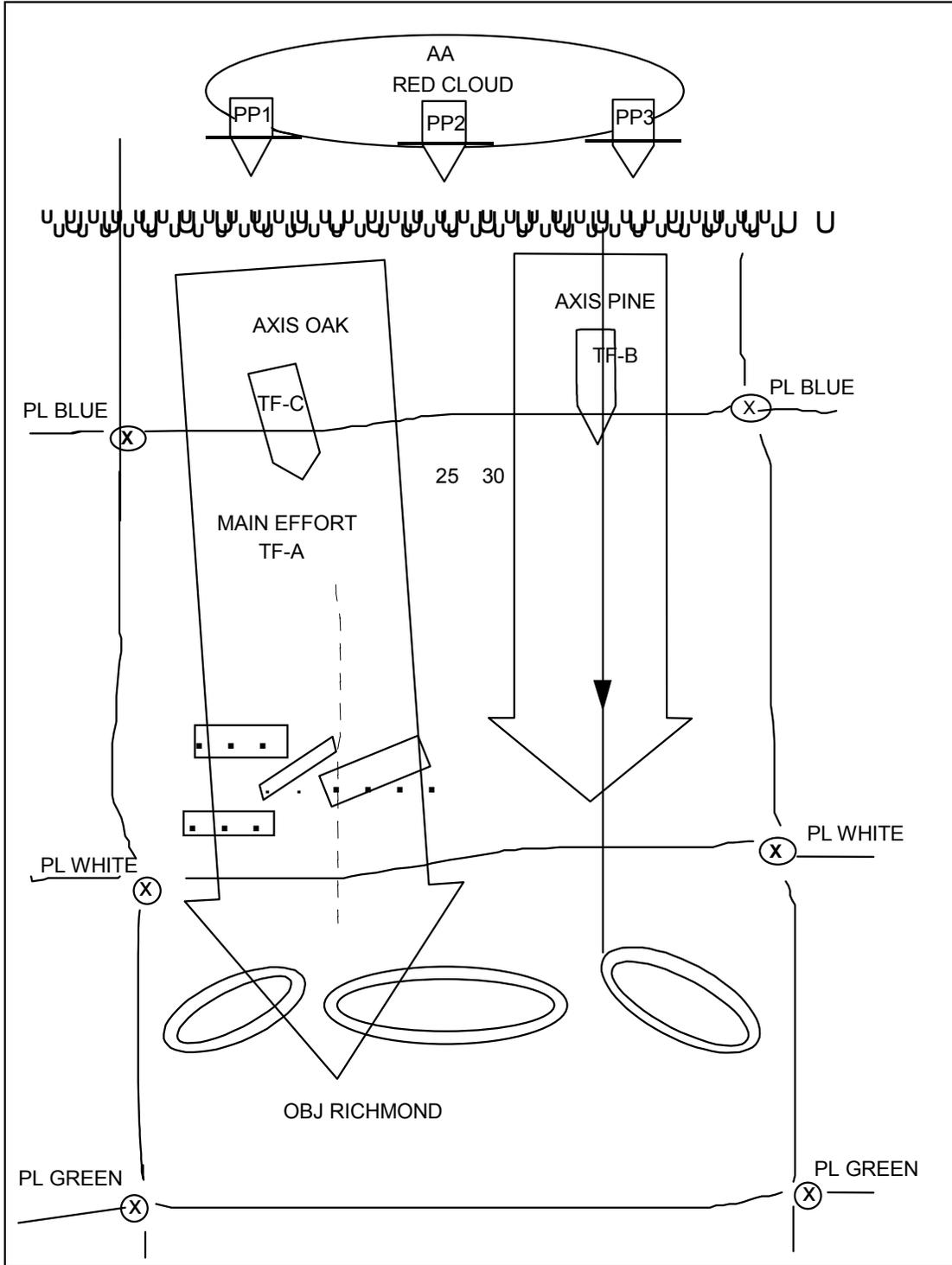


Figure 6-1. Sample Graphic Illustration Scenario





c. Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheet, which is used for recording the results of the evaluation.

d. Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order that they logically occur in the detailed scenario (Table 6-1). Group the selected missions and tasks into parts for continuous operations. The parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess the MILES casualties and to conduct in-process AARs.

6-3. **Resourcing and Planning.** Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating HQ must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

**Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements**

<b>CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001</b>			
<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (See note below.)</b>			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>Class IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the exercise.</b>			

6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting O/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team comprised of the following personnel is suggested for performing an external evaluation:

- (1) Senior O/C.
- (2) Staff O/C.
- (3) Operations O/C.
- (4) Administration O/C.
- (5) Logistics O/C.
- (6) NBC O/C.

b. The O/Cs must have a thorough knowledge of the unit mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They must understand the overall operation of the unit and how it is integrated into and supports force protection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC operations. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in NBC and local-defense, common-task areas. The O/Cs should be equal in grade to the soldier in charge of the element they are evaluating, and should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as a team member, and state their findings in reports and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing O/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of the specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training includes—

- (1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master events list, and the specific evaluation purposes and objectives.
- (2) The unit METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this MTP.
- (3) The O/C team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.
- (4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master events list items that are their responsibility. These include—
  - (a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in the O/Cs folders.
  - (b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.
  - (c) The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.
  - (d) Safety procedures.
  - (e) Evaluation data collection OPLAN and procedures.
  - (f) AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation, which includes war-gaming all items on the master events list in order of their occurrence and reviewing each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the O/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the unit AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the unit is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the unit capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or a senior noncommissioned officer (NCO) who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities and must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. Their training includes—

- (1) Threat tactics and rules of engagement.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) OPFOR tasks and standards.
- (4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (5) C2.
- (6) Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by various individuals and elements that are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

a. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit.

b. The HQ two echelons above the unit being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. It issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR.

c. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and must advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is developed by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer unit to accomplish its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

**Step 1.** Identify the MTP T&EOs that correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

**Step 2.** Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit performances of the tasks. Do this for each evaluation plan task.

**Step 3.** Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

**Step 4.** Record the unit overall capability to perform the task by using GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

(a) GO - The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standard.

(b) NO-GO - The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

c. Use other locally designed reports that are approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the unit overall final rating. The reports listed below can be used to collect the information.

(1) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-4). This report is used to record personnel and equipment status.

(2) Environmental data sheet (Figure 6-5). This report is used to record information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(3) Personnel and equipment loss report (Figure 6-6). This report is used to record information concerning the element personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

<b>UNIT DATA SHEET</b>						
1. Unit designation:				Date:		
2. Unit leaders (circle the most appropriate selection):						
Position	Rank	Time in Unit (Months)				
Commander	LTC/MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Executive Officer	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S3	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S2	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S1	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S4	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion Maintenance Officer	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
A Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
180B Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
C Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
3. Unit strength (excluding leaders):						
4. Equipment shortages (major items):						
5. Comments:						
Observer/controller signature:						

**Figure 6-4. Sample Unit Data Sheet**

<b>ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET</b>						
Exercise number and description:						
Date and time the exercise started:						
Date and time the exercise ended:						
1. <u>Weather conditions (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog
Other:						
Temperature:						
2. <u>Ground conditions (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
3. <u>Light conditions (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Day	Night					
Moon phase:	None	1/4	1/2	3/4	Full	
Average range of visibility due to light:						
4. <u>Terrain (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Flat	Rolling	Mountains	Jungle	Desert	Urban	Arctic
Other:						
Top soil:	Sandy	Rocky	Clay	Other:		
Average range of visibility due to terrain:						
5. <u>Remarks:</u>						

**Figure 6-5. Sample Environmental Data Sheet**



6-8. Preparing After-Action Reviews. AARs provide direct feedback to unit members by involving them in the diagnosis process and by enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through the after-action phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process are—

(1) **Planning.** Planning for AARs is started in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical breakpoints and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. Qualified O/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) **Preparation.** AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the unit performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable O/Cs and unit personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) **Conduct.** AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR purpose, the establishment of the AAR ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. A successful AAR follows these guidelines:

(a) AARs are not critiques, but are professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner to ensure that participants openly discuss the lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among O/Cs and unit personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also why it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of events associated with hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events not directly related to major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

**NOTE: Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circulars (TC) 25-6 and 25-20 and FM 25-101.**

**APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER**

For use of the OPORD, refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

<b>OPERATION ORDER</b>	
(classification) FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY	
Operation Order _____ 20_____	Copy ___ of ___ copies 25th Engineer Battalion
Task Organization:	
1. SITUATION.	
<p>a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. It is being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest INTSUM indicates that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p>	
<p>b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.</p>	
<p>(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</p>	
<p>(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</p>	
<p>(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery is in direct support.</p>	
2. MISSION. The TF conducts a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.	
3. EXECUTION.	
<p>a. Concept of the Operation: See the overlay developed by the trainer in the field.</p>	
<p>(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs AA Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the main body of the enemy so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy it. It is necessary to destroy enemy combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If the unit cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.</p>	
<p>(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).</p>	

**Figure A-1. Sample OPORD**

- (3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical checkpoints and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.
  - b. Subunit Missions (as required).
  - c. Engineer. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.
  - d. Coordinating Instructions.
    - (1) Report all enemy contact.
    - (2) Report all enemy obstacles.
    - (3) Report crossing of the PLs.
    - (4) Additional information, as required.
  - 4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the brigade SOP.
  - 5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
    - a. Command.
    - b. Signal.
      - (1) Current SOI.
      - (2) Radio-listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.
- FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY  
(classification)

**Figure A-1. Sample OPORD (continued)**

## APPENDIX B - THREAT ANALYSIS

### B-1. Introduction.

a. Dramatic changes in Europe and within the former Soviet Union have reduced the likelihood of an east-west military confrontation in Europe. The threat in Europe has not gone away completely, but it is less immediate and has changed in nature. Despite reductions, Russia will still have the largest army in Europe. Regardless of the stated peaceful intentions of current Russian political leaders, the Russian Armed Forces still possesses formidable capabilities, and those capabilities will remain, should conditions and intentions change. Other former Soviet republics are forming their own armed forces and could pose threats to each other or to other countries in the region. In this time of turmoil and uncertainty, the former Soviet military power remains a potentially dangerous challenge to US and North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) security. However, this remnant of the former Soviet threat is just one of many.

b. Many other nations are obtaining or developing sophisticated weaponry. Various regional conflicts could cause the US to intervene bilaterally or as part of a multinational coalition to protect our interests or those of our allies. Other potential conflict areas could call for a variety of responses by either the US, the former Soviet republics, or both. The threat may come in an organized military form, which may or may not follow the former Soviet model. It may also come in the form of insurgencies, terrorism, or narcotics trafficking. The US Army needs to be prepared to respond to this broad spectrum of potential threats that it could encounter in various contingencies.

B-2. Global Threats. Modern weapons and the capability to project military power to great distances beyond its own national borders would characterize a global-type threat, such as the former Soviet one. Against such a potential adversary, the threat to rear operations would include the following:

- Armored or mechanized forces breaking into the rear area.
- Airborne, airmobile, or amphibious assault forces inserted into the rear area.
- Long-range artillery, surface-to-surface missiles, or air strikes targeting rear-area assets.
- NBC weapons.
- Radio-electronic combat aimed at jamming or destroying our communications means and disrupting our C2.
- Agents and saboteurs.

B-3. Regional Threats. Regional threats, such as Iraq or North Korea, have less capability to project power. However, they may have some of the same weapons and organizations as a global threat. In fact, lessening superpower tensions are contributing significantly to the proliferation of sophisticated weaponry to emerging nations. This applies not only to conventional ground and air weapons, but also to chemical and nuclear weapons and missile systems. A mature regional power, possibly with a global power as a major source of its military hardware, emphasizes the ability to project its forces throughout a given region.

B-4. Local Threats. Local threats have even more localized objectives and little capability to project power beyond their own borders or their immediate neighbors. They generally have less modern equipment than global or regional threat powers or at least a limited variety of modern weapons. Their equipment may include modern small arms and light artillery (such as mortars, howitzers, and rocket launchers), but often does not include sophisticated weapons such as long-range conventional artillery or high-performance aircraft. A local threat may be heavily supported by a regional threat or even by a global power. For example, in the past, Cuba assisted Soviet-backed movements in Angola, Nicaragua, and Ethiopia. This outside influence will often be reflected in the equipment, organization, or tactics of the local threat forces. However, the actions of a local threat are often limited to insurgencies, civil wars, or

border disputes. Insurgents, especially those with outside help, may be able to purchase modern weapons, but may not have developed a logistics base able to sustain continuous conflict. Therefore, they often concentrate on guerrilla tactics, sabotage, assassinations, booby traps, or explosives to achieve their objectives.

**B-5. Special Situations.**

a. The threat in special situations includes terrorism. Terrorism may satisfy the objectives of different types of threats discussed above. Terrorists are the least likely threat to use conventional forces and thus are the hardest to anticipate or to train against. Terrorist tactics include the following:

- Assassinating or maiming.
- Arson.
- Bombing.
- Hijacking, kidnapping, or hostage taking.
- Raids and seizure of facilities.
- Sabotage.
- Hoaxes (such as bomb threats).

Terrorists may also be able to obtain weapons of mass destruction. A political leadership that supports terrorism, as in Iraq, may control such NBC weapons. If nuclear weapons are too difficult to obtain, terrorists may instead employ chemical or biological weapons.

b. Narcotics trafficking is another special-condition threat. It may be supported or tolerated by a global power for political or economic reasons. It may also be tied in with regional or local threat powers or with terrorism. There is often a marriage of convenience between insurgent groups and the drug cartels. The cartels can spend significant amounts of money on the latest in technology for communications and security to protect their operations. They can also buy weapons and otherwise finance regional insurgencies and cross-border conflicts.

**B-6. Bottom Line.** The threat to rear operations includes all of the above categories. These threat categories are not mutually exclusive and may overlap with one another.

## APPENDIX C - METRIC CONVERSION CHART

Table C-1. Metric Conversion Chart

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
<b>Length</b>		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.04470	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
<b>Weight</b>		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
Metric Units	Multiplied By	Equals US Units
<b>Length</b>		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
<b>Weight</b>		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds



**GLOSSARY****1LT**

first lieutenant

**1SG**

first sergeant

**5 Ss and T**

search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag

**AA**

avenue of approach; assembly area; antiaircraft; anchor assembly

**AAR**

after-action review; after-action report

**ABCS**

Army Battle Command System

**AC**

active component; alternating current

**ACE**

ammunition, casualties, and equipment; air combat element (NATO); analysis and control element; aviation combat element (USMC); armored combat earthmover (M9)

**activity**

A measurable, definable segment of work.

**ADC**

area damage control

**AO**

area of operations

**AOAP**

Army Oil Analysis Program

**AOR**

area of responsibility

**APC**

armored personnel carrier

**AR**

Army regulation; armor; angle of repose

**ARTEP**

Army Training and Evaluation Program

**ASAS**

All-Source Analysis System

**AT**

antiterrorism; antitank

**ATM**

advanced trauma management; atmosphere absolute

**attn**

attention

**ATWESS**

antitank weapon effects signature simulator; Antitank Weapon Effects Simulator System

**BAS**

basic allowance for subsistence; battalion aid station

**BDA**

battle damage assessment

**BDAR**

battle damage assessment and repair

**BF**

battle fatigue; board feet

**BMO**

battalion maintenance officer

**BOS**

battlefield operating system

**BP**

battle position; building pedestal (single story only); baseplate (single story and double story)

**BSA**

brigade support area

**C2**

command and control

**CATS**

combined arms training strategy

**CCIR**

commander's critical-information requirement

**CCT**

combat-control team

**CDM**

chemical downwind message

**CFX**

command field exercise

**CHS**

combat health support

**Class I**

Subsistence items (meals, ready-to-eat [MRE], T-rations, and fresh fruits and vegetables) and gratuitous-issue health and comfort items.

**Class IV**

Construction materials, including installed equipment and all fortification and obstacle materials.

**Class IX**

Repair parts and components, to include kits, assemblies, and subassemblies (repairable or nonrepairable) required for maintenance support of all equipment.

**Class V**

Ammunition of all types, including chemical, bombs, explosives, mines, fuzes, detonators, pyrotechnics, missiles, rockets, propellants, and other associate items.

**Class VIII**

Medical material, including repair parts peculiar to medical equipment and the management of blood.

**CMT**

Company Maintenance Team; common military training.

**COA**

course of action

**COMEX**

communications exercise

**COMSEC**

communications security

**concertina**

A type of military barbed wire.

**COP**

common operational picture

**CP**

command post; checkpoint

**CPR**

cardiovascular pulmonary resuscitation; cardiopulmonary resuscitation

**CPT**

captain

**CPX**

command post exercise

**CS**

combat support; Costa Rica; o-chlorobenzylidene malononitrile

**CSS**

combat service support

**DA**

Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action

**DA Form**

Department of the Army Form

**DA Pam**

Department of the Army Pamphlet

**DD**

Department of Defense

**DD FORM**

Department of the Defense Form

**defilade**

A fighting position offering cover and concealment to its occupant.

**DENTAC**

dental activity

**DMSO**

division medical supply office

**DNBI**

disease and nonbattle injuries

**DOD**

Department of Defense

**DODIC**

Department of Defense identification code

**DRS**

direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System

**DS**

direct support; double story

**DTSS**

Digital Topographic Support System

**DZ**

drop zone

**DZST**

drop zone support team

**EA**

each; engagement area

**ECCM**

electronic countercountermeasures

**EEFI**

essential elements of friendly information

**EM**  
electronic media; engineer manual; earthmoving; enlisted member

**EMT**  
emergency medical team; electrical metallic tubing

**ENDEX**  
end of exercise

**EOD**  
explosive ordnance disposal

**EPW**  
enemy prisoner of war

**ET**  
Endotracheal

**EW**  
electronic warfare

**FBCB2**  
Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below

**FH**  
field hospital; frequency hopping

**field of fire**  
The area which a weapon or group of weapons may effectively cover with fire from a given position.

**FIST**  
fire support team

**FM**  
field manual; frequency-modulated; frequency modulation

**FMC**  
field medical card

**FO**  
forward observer

**FPF**  
final protective fire; final protection fires

**FPL**  
final protective line

**FRAGO**  
fragmentary order

**frequency**  
The number of complete cycles per second existing in any form of wave motion.

**FS**  
fire support; foresight; Fort Sill

**FSB**

forward support battalion

**FST**

field sanitation team; fire support team

**FTX**

field training exercise

**G1**

Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel)

**GRREG**

graves registration

**GRS**

general religious support

**HQ**

headquarters

**IDS**

intermediate direct support

**IMETS**

Integrated Meteorological System

**indirect fire**

Fire delivered at a target which cannot be seen by the aimer.

**INTSUM**

intelligence summary

**IV**

intravenous; Table value 4

**KIA**

killed in action

**LCE**

load-carrying equipment

**LOI**

letter of instruction

**LTC**

lieutenant colonel

**LZ**

landing zone

**m**

manual; meter(s); minute; mechanized (graphics); monthly

**MACOM**

major Army command

**MAJ**

major

**MAPEX**

map exercise

**MCM**

materiel-change management; Manual for Courts-Martial

**MCO**

movement-control office

**MCP**

maintenance collection point

**MCS**

Maneuver Control System

**MCSR**

materiel condition status report

**MDI**

modernized demolition initiator

**mech**

mechanized

**MEDDAC**

medical department activity

**MEDLOG**

medical logistics

**METL**

mission-essential task list

**METT-TC**

mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations

**MHE**

materials-handling equipment

**MICLIC**

mine clearing line charge

**MIJI**

meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference

**mil**

military

**MILES**

Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System

**mm**

millimeter(s)

**MO**

Missouri; monthly

**mobility**

the ability to move across terrain.

**MOPP**

mission-oriented protective posture

**MOPP2**

mission-oriented protective posture Level 2 (mask carried/worn, protective suit and boots worn, and gloves carried)

**MOPP4**

mission-oriented protective posture Level 4 (mask, protective suit, boots, and gloves worn)

**MORTREP**

mortar bombing report

**MOS**

military occupational specialty; minimum operating strip

**MOUT**

military operations on urbanized terrain

**MP**

military police

**MSR**

main supply route

**MSRT**

mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal

**MTF**

medical-treatment facility

**MTP**

mission training plan; MOS training plan

**MWR**

morale, welfare, and recreation

**NATO**

North Atlantic Treaty Organization

**NBC**

nuclear, biological, and chemical

**NBC 1 Report**

Observer's Initial Report. This report is used by the observing unit to give basic, initial, and follow-up data about an NBC attack. This report is sent by platoons and companies to the battalion headquarters or by designated observers to the division NBC Center (NBCC).

**NBC 4 Report**

Monitoring and Survey Report. This report is used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.

**NBC 5 Report**

Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, the division prepares an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.

**NCO**

noncommissioned officer

**NCOER**

noncommissioned officer evaluation report

**NCOIC**

noncommissioned officer in charge

**NCS**

net control station

**NLT**

not later than

**NSN**

national stock number; nonstandard number

**O/C**

observer/controller

**OEG**

operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance

**OIC**

officer in charge

**OP**

observation post; operational procedure

**OPCON**

operational control

**OPFOR**

opposing forces

**OPLAN**

operation plan

**OPORD**

operation order

**OPSEC**

operations security

**P**  
needs practice; pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature

**PA**  
physician assistant

**PAC**  
personnel and administration center

**pam**  
pamphlet

**PCC**  
precombat check

**PCI**  
photo coverage indexes; precombat inspection

**PDDE**  
power-driven decontamination equipment

**PDS**  
personnel daily summary

**PIR**  
priority intelligence requirements

**PL**  
phase line; plastic limit; Poland

**PLL**  
prescribed load list

**PM**  
provost marshal; program manager; preventive maintenance

**PMCS**  
preventive-maintenance checks and services

**POL**  
petroleum, oils, and lubricants

**POM**  
preparation for oversea movement; program objective memorandum

**POS/NAV**  
position/navigation

**POV**  
privately owned vehicle

**PS**  
personnel strength; personnel status; pull switch

**PSC**  
personnel service company

<b>PSG</b>	platoon sergeant
<b>PSNCO</b>	personnel staff noncommissioned officer
<b>PSR</b>	personnel status report
<b>PVNTMED</b>	preventive medicine
<b>R&amp;S</b>	reconnaissance and security; reconnaissance and surveillance
<b>radiac</b>	radiation, detection, indication, and computation
<b>RATELO</b>	radiotelephone operator
<b>RC</b>	rapid cure; reserve component
<b>reg</b>	Regiment; regulation; register
<b>RES</b>	radiation exposure status
<b>RFL</b>	restrictive fire line
<b>ROE</b>	rules of engagement
<b>ROI</b>	rules of interaction
<b>RP</b>	Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point; reference point; red phosphorus
<b>RTD</b>	return to duty
<b>S1</b>	Adjutant (US Army)
<b>S2</b>	Intelligence Officer (US Army)
<b>S3</b>	Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
<b>S4</b>	Supply Officer (US Army)

**SA**  
semiannually; situational awareness

**SATRAN**  
satellite transmission

**SATS**  
Standard Army Training System

**SAW**  
squad automatic weapon

**SB**  
supply bulletin; switchboard

**SCATMINE**  
scatterable mine

**SCPE**  
simplified collective-protection equipment

**SHELREP**  
shelling report

**SHTU**  
simplified handheld terminal unit

**SIDPERS**  
Standard Installation/Division Personnel System

**SINGARS**  
Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System

**SITREP**  
situation report

**SJA**  
Staff Judge Advocate

**SM**  
soldier's manual

**SOFA**  
Status of Forces Agreement

**SOI**  
signal operation instructions

**SOP**  
standing operating procedure

**SP**

start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain

**SPOTREP**

spot report

**SS**

side shot; single story; slow set; stringer spacing

**SSI**

standing signal instructions; signal supplemental instructions

**STANAG**

standardization agreement

**station**

a specific geographic location, normally used in context of the layout of horizontal construction.

**STB**

supertropical bleach

**STP**

soldier training publication

**STRAC**

Standards in Training Commission

**STX**

situational training exercise

**survivability**

Measures taken to protect a force from the effects of enemy fires.

**T**

trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station; time; tracked

**T&EO**

training and evaluation outline

**TA**

terrain analysis; theater Army; training area; training aid

**TACCS**

Tactical Army Combat Service Support (CSS) Computer System

**TACSOP**

tactical standing operating procedure

**TAMMS**

The Army Maintenance Management System

**task force**

A grouping of units under a single commander, designed for a specific mission.

**TB**  
technical bulletin

**TC**  
technical coordinator; training circular; track commander; tank commander

**TEWT**  
tactical exercise without troops

**TF**  
task force; total float

**Threat Level I**  
Enemy agent activity. Missions include espionage, interdiction, and subversion; Sabotage by enemy sympathizers. Missions include arson, assassination, sabotage, theft of supplies and material, and political unrest; Terrorism. Actions that instill fear by violence or threats of violence to obtain political, religious, or ideological goals.

**Threat Level II**  
Diversionary and sabotage operations conducted by combat units; Raid, ambush, and reconnaissance operations conducted by combat units; Special or unconventional warfare missions.

**Threat Level III**  
Heliborne operations; Airborne operations; Amphibious operations; Ground force deliberate operations; Infiltration operations.

**TM**  
team; technical manual; trademark

**TNT**  
trinitrotoluene

**TOC**  
tactical operations center

**TOCSOP**  
tactical operations center standing operating procedure

**TOE**  
table(s) of organization and equipment

**TRADOC**  
United States Army Training and Doctrine Command

**TRP**  
target reference point; traffic regulation plan

**TSEC**  
transmission security

**TSOP**  
tactical standing operating procedure

**U**  
unclassified; up; untrained; unlocked

**UAV**  
unmanned aerial vehicle

**UCMJ**  
Uniform Code of Military Justice

**UMCP**  
unit maintenance collection point

**UMT**  
unit ministry team

**UPW**  
unit proficiency work sheet

**US**  
United States

**UXO**  
unexploded ordnance

**WAM**  
wide-area munition; wide area mine

**WCS**  
weapon control status; weapon control station

**WO**  
warrant officer; warning order

**XO**  
executive officer



**REQUIRED REFERENCES****Army Regulations**

AR 15-6	Procedures for Investigating Officers and Boards of Officers. 11 May 1988
AR 190-47	The Army Corrections System. 15 August 1996
AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997
AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting. 30 November 2001
AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM). 15 June 1973
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. 3 February 1995
AR 27-10	Military Justice. 6 September 2002
AR 27-20	Claims. 14 November 2002
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994
AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990
AR 40-66	Medical Record Administration and Health Care Documentation. 10 March 2003
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995
AR 600-15	Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986
AR 600-20	Army Command Policy. 13 May 2002
AR 600-38	Meal Card Management System. 11 March 1988
AR 600-8	Military Personnel Management. 1 October 1989
AR 600-8-1	Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. 20 October 1994
AR 600-8-14	Identification Cards for Members of the Uniformed Services, Their Family Members, and Other Eligible Personnel. 20 December 2002
AR 600-8-2	Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). 30 October 1987
AR 600-85	Army Substance Abuse Program (ASAP). 1 October 2001
AR 600-8-8	The Total Army Sponsorship Program. 1 July 1993
AR 608-99	Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994
AR 635-200	Enlisted Personnel. 1 November 2000
AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. 16 September 1997
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997
AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. 1 August 1994

**Army Training and Evaluation Program**

ARTEP 5-335-DRILL	Engineer Drills. 11 January 2001
ARTEP 5-435-66-MTP	Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps (Mech), Battalion Staff. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-437-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 7-8-DRILL	Battle Drills for the Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 25 June 2002

### **Department of Army Forms**

DA FORM 2166-8	Noncommissioned Officer Evaluation Report (NCOER). 1 October 2001
DA FORM 2166-8-1	NCO Counseling Checklist/Record. 1 October 2001
DA FORM 3955	Change of Address and Directory Card. 1 February 1979
DA FORM 647	Personnel Register. 1 August 1978

### **Department of Army Pamphlets**

DA PAM 600-8-2	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Personnel Service Center Level Procedures. 1 August 1986
DA PAM 600-8-23	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Data Base Management Procedures. 1 April 1992
DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures). 31 December 1997
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

### **Department of Defense Publications**

DOD REG 5500.7-R	Standards of Conduct. 30 August 1993
------------------	--------------------------------------

### **Field Manuals**

FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996
FM 10-23-1	Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations. 17 March 1992
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermining Operations. 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000
FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the AirLand Battle. 15 October 1990
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990
FM 25-101	Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990
FM 3-0	Operations. 14 June 2001
FM 3-11	Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993
FM 3-21.38	Pathfinder Operations. 1 October 2002
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992
FM 3-4	NBC Protection. 29 May 1992
FM 34-3	Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990
FM 34-5	Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations. 29 July 1994
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995

FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000
FM 3-90.1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 9 December 2002
FM 4-25.11	First Aid. 23 December 2002
FM 4-25.12	Unit Field Sanitation Team. 25 January 2002
FM 44-100	US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
FM 5-102	Countermobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995
FM 7-0	Training the Force. 22 October 2002
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 2000
FM 8-285	Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995
FM 9-43-2	Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair. 3 October 1995

### Other Product Types

DD FORM 457	Investigating Officer's Report. 29 August 1984
-------------	--

### Technical Manuals

TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653)). 15 June 1990
TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983

### Training Circulars

TC 12-17	Adjutant's Call/The S1 Handbook. 17 March 1992
TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988

### Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1248	Road Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1249	Bridge Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1250	Tunnel Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1251	Ford Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1252	Ferry Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1594	Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. 1 November 1962

DA FORM 1711-R	Engineer Reconnaissance Report. 1 May 1985
DA FORM 2166-8	Noncommissioned Officer Evaluation Report (NCOER). 1 October 2001
DA FORM 2166-8-1	NCO Counseling Checklist/Record. 1 October 2001
DA FORM 3955	Change of Address and Directory Card. 1 February 1979
DA FORM 647	Personnel Register. 1 August 1978
DA FORM 67-9	Officer Evaluation Report. 1 October 1997

### **Department of Army Pamphlets**

DA PAM 600-8-2	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Personnel Service Center Level Procedures. 1 August 1986
DA PAM 600-8-23	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Data Base Management Procedures. 1 April 1992
DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures). 31 December 1997
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

### **Department of Defense Publications**

DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996
DOD REG 5500.7-R	Standards of Conduct. 30 August 1993

### **Field Manuals**

FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996
FM 10-23-1	Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations. 17 March 1992
FM 10-27-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993
FM 10-27-2	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations. 18 June 1991
FM 1-05	Religious Support. 18 April 2003
FM 10-500-1	Airdrop Support Operations in a Theater of Operations. 19 June 1991
FM 10-64	Mortuary Affairs Operations. 16 February 1999
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994
FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984
FM 22-51	Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the AirLand Battle. 15 October 1990
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990
FM 3-0	Operations. 14 June 2001

FM 3-11	Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-11.11	Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993
FM 3-19.30	Physical Security. 8 January 2001
FM 3-19.4	Military Police Leaders' Handbook. 4 March 2002
FM 3-19.40	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001
FM 3-20.98	Reconnaissance Platoon. 2 December 2002
FM 3-21.38	Pathfinder Operations. 1 October 2002
FM 3-21.71	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 20 August 2002
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992
FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
FM 3-4	NBC Protection. 29 May 1992
FM 34-2-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance. 19 June 1991
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000
FM 3-50	Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990
FM 3-90.1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 9 December 2002
FM 4-02.6	The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 1 August 2002
FM 4-25.12	Unit Field Sanitation Team. 25 January 2002
FM 4-30.3	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000
FM 44-100	US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000
FM 44-64	SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997
FM 44-8	Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996
FM 5-10	Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
FM 5-102	Counter mobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-422	Engineer Prime Power Operations. 7 May 1993
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995
FM 6-22.5	Combat Stress. 23 June 2000
FM 7-0	Training the Force. 22 October 2002
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 7-22.7	The Army Noncommissioned Officer Guide. 23 December 2002
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 7-92	The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad (Airborne, Air Assault, Light Infantry). 23 December 1992
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 2000

FM 8-285 Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995

FM 8-51 Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 September 1994

FM 9-43-2 Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair. 3 October 1995

#### **Other Product Types**

DD FORM 457 Investigating Officer's Report. 29 August 1984

#### **Soldier Training Publications**

STP 5-12B24-SM-TG MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Levels 2/3/4, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 28 March 2003

STP 5-62G13-SM-TG MOS 62G, Quarrying Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 5 May 1986

#### **Technical Manuals**

TM 11-5805-262-12 Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653)). 15 June 1990

TM 11-5805-294-12 Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983

TM 750-244-2 Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command). 14 March 1972

TM 750-244-3 Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command). 23 September 1969

TM 750-244-6 Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972

TM 750-244-7 Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090 and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use. 18 June 1970

#### **Training Circulars**

TC 12-17 Adjutant's Call/The S1 Handbook. 17 March 1992

TC 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988

### **Related Publications**

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

#### **Army Regulations**

AR 15-6 Procedures for Investigating Officers and Boards of Officers. 11 May 1988

AR 190-47 The Army Corrections System. 15 August 1996

AR 190-8 Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997

AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting. 30 November 2001
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. 3 February 1995
AR 27-10	Military Justice. 6 September 2002
AR 27-20	Claims. 14 November 2002
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995
AR 600-15	Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986
AR 600-8-1	Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. 20 October 1994
AR 600-8-2	Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). 30 October 1987
AR 600-85	Army Substance Abuse Program (ASAP). 1 October 2001
AR 608-99	Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994
AR 635-200	Enlisted Personnel. 1 November 2000
AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. 16 September 1997
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997
AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. 1 August 1994

### Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1248	Road Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1249	Bridge Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1250	Tunnel Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1251	Ford Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1252	Ferry Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1594	Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. 1 November 1962
DA FORM 1711-R	Engineer Reconnaissance Report. 1 May 1985
DA FORM 2028	Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. 1 February 1974

### Field Manuals

FM 3-20.15	Tank Platoon. 1 November 2001
FM 4-30.3	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 63-1	Support Battalions and Squadrons, Separate Brigades and Armored Cavalry Regiment. 30 September 1993
FM 63-2	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991
FM 63-20	Forward Support Battalion. 26 February 1990

### Other Product Types

UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice
------	----------------------------------

### Army Regulations

AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
----------	---

**Department of Army Forms**

DA FORM 67-9                      Officer Evaluation Report. 1 October 1997

**Department of Defense Publications**

DD FORM 2745                      Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996

**Field Manuals**

FM 10-27-1                      Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993

FM 10-27-2                      Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations. 18 June 1991

FM 1-05                          Religious Support. 18 April 2003

FM 10-500-1                      Airdrop Support Operations in a Theater of Operations. 19 June 1991

FM 10-64                          Mortuary Affairs Operations. 16 February 1999

FM 21-16                          Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994

FM 22-51                          Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994

FM 3-11.11                        Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 10 March 2003

FM 3-19.30                        Physical Security. 8 January 2001

FM 3-19.4                         Military Police Leaders' Handbook. 4 March 2002

FM 3-19.40                        Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001

FM 3-20.15                        Tank Platoon. 1 November 2001

FM 3-20.98                        Reconnaissance Platoon. 2 December 2002

FM 3-21.71                        Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 20 August 2002

FM 3-34.2                         Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000

FM 34-2-1                         Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance. 19 June 1991

FM 3-50                          Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990

FM 4-02.6                         The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 1 August 2002

FM 4-30.3                         Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000

FM 44-64                         SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997

FM 44-8                          Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999

FM 5-10                          Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995

FM 5-170                         Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998

FM 5-422                         Engineer Prime Power Operations. 7 May 1993

FM 6-22.5                         Combat Stress. 23 June 2000

FM 63-1                         Support Battalions and Squadrons, Separate Brigades and Armored Cavalry Regiment. 30 September 1993

FM 63-2                         Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991

FM 63-20                         Forward Support Battalion. 26 February 1990

FM 7-22.7                         The Army Noncommissioned Officer Guide. 23 December 2002

FM 7-92                         The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad (Airborne, Air Assault, Light Infantry). 23 December 1992

FM 8-51                         Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 September 1994

**Other Product Types**

TRADOC PAM 11-9  
UCMJ

Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990  
Uniform Code of Military Justice

**Technical Manuals**

TM 750-244-2

Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command). 14 March 1972

TM 750-244-3

Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command). 23 September 1969

TM 750-244-6

Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972

TM 750-244-7

Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090 and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use. 18 June 1970



### Questionnaire

MTP NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

MTP TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire for your records. Mail to: Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Building 3200, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (for example, company commander or platoon sergeant)?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. How long have you served in this position? \_\_\_\_\_

3. How long have you served in this unit? \_\_\_\_\_

4. What is your component?

- a. Active component
- b. Reserve component

5. Where is your unit?

- a. Continental United States (CONUS)
- b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
- c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
- d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
- e. Other (specify)

\_\_\_\_\_

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel that this MTP has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

- a. Has made training worse
- b. Has made training better
- c. Has had no affect on training
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion

7. How easy is the MTP to use, compared to other training products?

- a. Harder
- b. Easier
- c. About the same
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes
- c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation
- g. Do not know or do not have an opinion

8. What part of the MTP was least useful? \_\_\_\_\_

9. What part of the MTP was most useful? \_\_\_\_\_

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

11. What part of the MTP was the easiest to understand?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

12. The training exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

- a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
- b. They help but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit training requirements.
- c. They help but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit training requirements.
- d. They help but only provide between 51 and 80 percent of my unit training requirements.
- e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STXs be added or deleted from the MTP?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the training exercises?

- a. Have too many pages
- b. Are hard to read and understand
- c. Need more illustrations
- d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises
- e. Need more information on leader training
- f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises
- g. Need more information on support and resources
- h. Need more information on the elements that are normally attached
- i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills
- j. Do not know or do not have an opinion

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the training exercises?
- a. Have too many pages
  - b. Are hard to read and understand
  - c. Need more illustrations
  - d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises
  - e. Need more information on leader training
  - f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises
  - g. Need more information on support and resources
  - h. Need more information on normally attached elements
  - i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills
  - j. Do not know or do not have an opinion

16. How many STXs have you trained or participated in personally? \_\_\_\_\_

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?
- a. Leave it out altogether
  - b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises
  - c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation
  - d. Make standards less detailed
  - e. Make standards more detailed
  - f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in  
wartime
  - g. Do not change; chapter is fine
  - h. Do not know or do not have an opinion

18. What changes would you make to Chapter 6, External Evaluation?
- a. Leave it out altogether
  - b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises
  - c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation
  - d. Make standards less detailed
  - e. Make standards more detailed
  - f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in  
wartime
  - g. Do not change; chapter is fine
  - h. Do not know or do not have an opinion

19. Additional comments:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

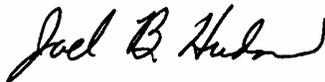


**ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP  
21 AUGUST 2003**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

**PETER J. SCHOOMAKER**  
General, United States Army  
Chief of Staff

Official:



**JOEL B. HUDSON**  
Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army  
0323303

**DISTRIBUTION:**

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve:* Not to be distributed.  
Electronic Means Only.

**PIN: 081013-000**